

BRIGADIER-GENERAL RICHARD W. YOUNG

The popular...the prevailing, conception of a soldier is that of a figure in uniform, stiff, erect, sturdy, striding, emitting crisp, sharp commands, angular gesture, and snappy salutes. I don't think of General Young as such. True, he wore the uniform. True, by training, he had the precision of a soldiery in its highest perfection, but I never saw it and the men with him never saw it because inside of it all was the heart, that soul which made us feel General Young, not see him. I always felt him. That gentleness, that kindness, that predominating modesty was always to the fore. He could command, he could reprove, he could direct with the same soft words, the same gentle manner, the same loving, tender interest.

Address by Major Wesley King, In Memorium, p 12.



THE LIFE OF  
BRIGADIER GENERAL RICHARD W. YOUNG

by

Louis Paul Murray

A thesis submitted to the faculty of the University  
of Utah in partial fulfillment of the requirements  
for the degree of

\_\_\_\_\_ Master \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ Science \_\_\_\_\_  
Department of \_\_\_\_\_ History \_\_\_\_\_

University of Utah

September, 1959

This Thesis for the M. S. degree

by

Louis Paul Murray

has been approved by

September 1959

Chairman, Supervisory Committee

Reader, Supervisory Committee

Head, Major Department

Dean, Graduate School



RESPECTFULLY DEDICATED

To the Members of the West Point Class of 1949

Who Died in Battle

1950-1953

## PREFACE

The funeral of Richard W. Young has been described as one of the largest and most impressive ever held in the state of Utah. His sudden and unexpected demise shocked his fellow citizens, and evoked expressions of love, loyalty and affection that unmistakably testified to his great stature in the state and reputation in the nation. Yet the high regard that he commanded at his death had not come easily. A Salt Lake paper which called his death a "national tragedy" had thirty-four years earlier called the assignment of Second Lieutenant Richard W. Young, the "Spy," to Fort Douglas, Utah the greatest military blunder since the order of the "Light Brigade to charge at Balaklava." This contrasting status depicts most eloquently some of the problems of Utah History and the life of General Young.

It had been my original intention to limit the scope of this research to the military phases of his life and his leadership qualities. I soon was confronted, however, by continual repetitions of phrases such as: "General Richard W. Young was my ideal in every aspect of his life"; (From an ex-subordinate officer and non-Mormon), "I love that man...if he had any faults I didn't know of them"; and "Our lives centered about him." In view of these evaluations and the progressive acceptance of General Young from his early years, it seemed most inappropriate to exclude factors which would have resulted in the presentation of a man devoid of much of his color, strength of personality, and insights into his tremendous ability to influence people. Motivated by curiosity and

this new found conviction, I launched out into the broad spectrum of his personality, activities and contributions. In retrospect I feel the decision was correct, but now acknowledge that the total coverage of all the aspects of General Young's life in a paper of this size is not possible for his activities and interests have been found too extensive and diverse.

It is almost impossible to write about early Utah history without becoming involved in the religious background. Certainly one cannot escape this factor in a general evaluation of Richard W. Young. During his life span the Mormon Church progressed from one of the most despised religious groups of America to one of general recognition and tolerance. His life is an inexorable part of a religious minority struggling for independence. On reflection I think it will be admitted that this nation of ours is, after all, an amalgamation of minority groups. The exclusion of any of its parts weakens the whole. Much energy and effort in early Utah was sacrificed by religious conflict and turmoil that could have been used in constructive enterprises. I sincerely feel that of those personalities within the Mormon Church responsible for the establishment of a new order, an era of peace, few have been more important or prominent than Richard W. Young. In this lies one of his chief contributions to both his church and nation.

It has been my desire to give no greater emphasis to religious problems and background than seemed necessary for a realistic appraisal of General Young and the emotional atmosphere in which he lived. I have tried to avoid taking issue or attempting to prove the position or value of either one or the other side in the religious conflict. Despite efforts of impartiality it is appropriate to state that I was

born and reared in Utah, and have been a member of the Mormon Church since my eighth birthday.

My debt of gratitude to the many people who have assisted or inspired me to seek this opportunity exceeds the scope of usual prefatory acknowledgements. But I would like to express my deep appreciation to the United States Air Force in sending me to a graduate school. Along the road to this assignment I gratefully pay tribute to Dr. Milton R. Merrill of Utah State University; Mr. Clyde Tidwell and Dr. H. E. Bateman of the University of Arizona; Colonel John L. Frisbee, former Head of the Department of History, U. S. Air Force Academy; Colonel Donald C. Foster and Lieutenant-Colonel Harry A. Bailey, Headquarters, Strategic Air Command; Mr. Harold L. Lillie, Air Force Institute of Technology; Lieutenant-Colonel John R. Sala, Head of the Department of History, U. S. Air Force Academy; and my former roommate, Captain Norman D. Eaton, Instructor, U. S. Air Force Academy. At the University of Utah I am indebted to all the professors of the History and Political Science Departments for their inspirational and instructive lectures. Dr. Leland H. Creer and Dr. Emil Lucki have been most helpful in guiding my study program. I particularly appreciate the time and efforts of Drs. Creer and Miller who have read this thesis and have made helpful and valuable suggestions for its improvement. The library staff, especially Mrs. Anne W. Wallace, and Dr. Victor L. Cline of the Psychology Department have been most helpful, as have the staffs of the Church Historian's Office and the Utah State Historical Society. The members of the Richard W. Young family have cooperated most generously. In addition to interviews, Mrs. Mary Young Burton, Richard W. Young Jr., and Dr. Clark Young have provided valuable documents. Dr. Young has read most of the thesis and made excellent amendatory and corrective

suggestions, and has willingly assisted in numerous other ways. Mrs. Florence Patterson and Mrs. Kay Pickering have been exceedingly gracious and diligent in typing the thesis. Mr. Henry Ogaard kindly furnished a list of ex-members of the 145th Field Artillery Regiment. Lynn, Elmo and Major Garff, and Martel Pedersen have been most helpful and kind in their assistance. Last but not least is my appreciation for the love and support of my own family, my brothers, and especially my mother and my wife. The care of our five small children has required both courage and skill on the part of my wife. My mother has ferreted out many isolated references and greatly helped in proof reading various drafts and stencils. Although many have assisted I claim responsibility to any errors of fact, interpretation or style that may have been made.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
PREFACE . . . . .	Iv
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS . . . . .	Ix
CHAPTER	
I. THE YEARS BEFORE WEST POINT (1858-1878). . . . .	2
II. THE UNITED STATES MILITARY ACADEMY (1878-1882) . . . . .	24
III. ON THE ROAD TO ACCEPTANCE, ARMY TOUR I (1882-1888) . . . . .	41
IV. EARLY YEARS AS A CIVILIAN (1888-1898) . . . . .	70
V. GLORY--SPANISH AMERICAN WAR, ARMY TOUR II (1898-1899). . . . .	88
VI. THE LONG TOUR OF CIVILIAN LIFE (1899-1917). . . . .	114
VII. THE CRUSADE FOR FREEDOM, ARMY TOUR III (1917-1919). . . . .	147
VIII. THE LAST YEAR (1919) . . . . .	166
IX. SUMMARY AND EVALUATION . . . . .	175
BIBLIOGRAPHY . . . . .	182
APPENDIXES	
I. THE LAST HOURS AND DEATH OF BRIGHAM YOUNG . . . . .	196
II. SAMPLE LETTERS OF HEBER M. WELLS . . . . .	200
III. LETTER FROM PRESIDENT JOHN TAYLOR . . . . .	206
IV. LETTER TO MAJOR W. A. SIMPSON . . . . .	209
V. SAMPLE BATTLE REPORTS FROM MAJOR RICHARD W. YOUNG . . . . .	211
VI. LETTER TO GOVERNOR WELLS REFUTING UNDUE CREDIT TO RICHARD W. YOUNG AND BATTERY A . . . . .	226
VII. "MY HERO AND MY HEROINE." SUSAN YOUNG GATES POEM . . . . .	229
VIII. SPEECH OF GENERAL YOUNG TO 145th FIELD ARTILLERY REGIMENT . . . . .	231
IX. GENERAL YOUNG'S TOUR OF FRANCE AND BATTLE LINES NOVEMBER 1918 . . . . .	234

## LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

Figure	Page
1. General Richard W. Young . . . . .	Introduction
2. Joseph A. Young, Margaret W. Young, and Richard W. Young . . . . .	3
3. West Point Parade Formation . . . . .	24
4. Company Staff, Cadet Company D . . . . .	31
5. Captain Richard W. Young . . . . .	93
6. Supreme Court of the Philippine Islands . . . . .	115
7. Representatives of the 21st International Irrigation Congress, Calgary, Alberta . . . . .	134
8. Family Home and Cabin of R. W. Young . . . . .	137
9. Minerva Richards Young . . . . .	142
10. Sketches of Battle Scenes: Tuliahan, Marilao . . . . .	218

## CHAPTER I

### THE YEARS BEFORE WEST POINT (1858-1878)



## CHAPTER I

### THE YEARS BEFORE WEST POINT (1858-1878)

Ten reasons for going to West Point "are sufficient I think." So reflected the future Brigadier General Richard W. Young on the 20th day of February 1878.<sup>1</sup> Well might he have also reflected on the "peculiar" cultural and geographical environment that was his. His grandfather was the great pioneer leader, empire builder, and religious leader, Brigham Young, "long and favorably known not only to his thousands of followers-- as a great, good and magnanimous man, but to all the intelligent world as a practitioner of righteous precepts."<sup>2</sup>

Richard's father, Joseph A. Young, was the eldest son of Brigham Young's second wife, Mary Ann Angell.<sup>3</sup> He was born in Kirtland, Ohio, October 14, 1834.<sup>4</sup> Though deprived of a formal education during the turbulent era of his youth, Joseph A. Young had one of the best libraries in the territory. He read widely, exhibited exceptional qualities of leadership and statesmanship in the territorial legislature as well as in his Church duties of pioneer leader of the Sevier region of Zion. With John Sharp he supervised construction (of the railroad grade) through

---

<sup>1</sup>Richard W. Young, Private Journal of Richard W. Young, containing an introduction and intermittent entries from August 13, 1877 to May 15, 1878 (Salt Lake City), 34.

<sup>2</sup>Ibid., 17

<sup>3</sup>Family Group Sheet of Brigham Young and Mary Ann Angell, Genealogical Records, Genealogical Library of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints (Salt Lake City).

<sup>4</sup>Idem.

FIG. 2

Margaret Whitehead Young

Joseph A. Young

Richard W. Young



Weber Canyon. Later he directed the erection of the Old Utah Central (Salt Lake Line) from Ogden to Salt Lake, and became its first superintendent. While laboring on the plan specifications of the Manti Temple in 1875 Joseph A. "fell victim to the unsatiable power--death."<sup>1</sup>

The mother of Richard W. Young, Margaret Whitehead, immigrated with her parents to Utah in 1856.<sup>2</sup> Her father, Richard Whitehead, was born in Bury, Lancashire, England, and her mother, Elizabeth Walsh, came from Blackburn, Lancashire.

Following an interval in Utah, Richard Whitehead and his wife returned to England. Margaret married Joseph A. Young on February 19, 1857, entering thereby into the much discussed institution of polygamy--Margaret being the second wife.<sup>3</sup>

Her son and eldest child, Richard, was born on the 19th day of April 1858, nine weeks prior to the entry of Johnston's army into Salt Lake City. It seems fitting that the prenatal period and early months of Richard W. Young should parallel the most acute military and political crisis of the Mormons in Utah. Undoubtedly before the 26th day of June 1858, as the United States Troops entered the deserted and silent city,

<sup>1</sup>Young, op. cit., 1

<sup>2</sup>Ibid., 1-2, for all the information about Richard W. Young's mother and her parents.

<sup>3</sup>Marriage (Endowment) Card File, Genealogical Library. Joseph A. Young had three wives: Thalia Elizabeth Grant, married December 18, 1856; Margaret Whitehead, married February 19, 1857; and Clara Frederata Stenshouse, married March 4, 1867. In all, Joseph had eleven children. Richard W. was the only living child of his mother. A younger sister had died in infancy. Young, op. cit., 2.

a city ready for the torch in case of broken pledges, Richard was being hustled southward along with the other inhabitants to escape the eventualities of invasion.<sup>1</sup> Peace having been restored, he was returned to the Beehive House, his birthplace, and there, and in the Lion House, he spent his first three years of life.<sup>2</sup> Thereafter, he dwelt in a small home immediately west of the Lion House, approximately where the Hotel Utah garage is now located. This home had been given to his parents by the Mormon leader.

Richard W.<sup>3</sup> began his education at eight years of age. When thirteen he quit school for one year, in order to gain employment at the railroad office. At the end of the year he returned to school, being a student at the University of Deseret for two years. Between 1874 and 1877 Richard W. was three months the principal of Manti High School;<sup>4</sup> a teacher for a similar period of time at Richfield; worked as a rod man on a survey party; was engaged in drafting work, and spent almost two years learning carpentry while working in the Church architect's office.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Edward W. Tullidge, The History of Salt Lake City (Salt Lake City, 1886), 157-66, 211-13. Orson F. Whitney, History of Utah (Salt Lake City, 1904), IV, 560. Mr. Whitney states that at the time of Richard's birth the city was even then almost deserted.

<sup>2</sup>Young, op. cit., 3. The Beehive and Lion Houses, located just east of the Temple Block in Salt Lake City, were residences of Brigham Young. They are prominent tourist attractions today.

<sup>3</sup>Richard W. Young is referred to as Richard W.; Richard, R. W., "Brig," Brigham, Dick.

<sup>4</sup>Certificate to Richard W. Young from William L. Reid, March 24, 1876. The cause of the short school term was due to the necessity of having the students assist their parents in planting the crops.

<sup>5</sup>Young, op. cit., 3.

As youths, Richard W., Heber J. Grant, and Feramorz L. Young, were inseparable companions. Dating from this period, the future president of the L. D. S. Church, Heber J. Grant, says of Richard W.: "He was honest to the core. No word, no thought of his heart to the contrary, from my earliest recollection of him to the present day, can I recall. In speaking of him I know that I knew his heart and his sentiments, and there was no thought in that heart but to seek to know the right and to do the right."<sup>1</sup>

In 1871 Richard's uncle, Willard Young, entered West Point. It was the desire of Richard's father that he follow Willard. Richard's Journal notes: "I had been appointed to go...I was preparing and was to have started within 12 or 14 days..."<sup>2</sup> But the sudden, unexpected death of his father delayed the plans.

The period from the death of his father focused his youthful thoughts upon preparation for his future career. During two years his plans centered mostly around his "adopted profession," architecture.

<sup>1</sup>In Memoriam, Reprint of Richard W. Young funeral services (Salt Lake City, 1920), 18. Heber J. Grant was the seventh president of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. He frequently mentioned Richard W. in conversation and public addresses.

<sup>2</sup>Young, op. cit., 33. Whitney, op. cit., IV, 560. Richard W. received an appointment in 1875 from the Utah Representative in Congress, George Q. Cannon. He confirms Richard W.'s inability to go to West Point at this time, because of his father's death. This information does not harmonize, however, with the appointment and later departure of J. B. Toronto to West Point on June 13, 1875. Richard W. implies that the Territory was allowed only one representative in the Academy in any given period. Also new cadets normally entered each mid-June. It may be that Richard received equivalent of modern day alternate appointments. The discrepancy of facts described, above has not been resolved at time of this writing. For citation of Toronto's departure to West Point see: Journal History of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, June 13, 1875, p 1. Contains daily and miscellaneous record and newsclips of interest to the Church. Compiled by the Church Historian's Office, Salt Lake City. Hereafter called Journal History.

From his grandfather, Brigham Young, Richard hoped to borrow money sufficient to finance an architectural education in an eastern college. In repayment he would sign over to the Mormon leader some investments inherited from his father. For the deficient balance he would borrow from his grandfather, trusting that Brigham would be "lenient in time and interest" in the repayment.<sup>1</sup> Certainly, Richard W. envisioned the value of an education: "I consider that a thousand or so dollars judiciously expended upon my education now would result in thousands of dollars benefit to myself and my religion."<sup>2</sup>

Richard W. visualized tremendous growth in the Mormondom resulting in multiplicity of towns and cities and many temples being built. He projected himself as a builder of temples, noting "whose house should be more scientifically exact in proportion and symmetry than the Lords." [?] <sup>3</sup> After submitting his master plan in writing to his grandfather he was startled when he received word that it had been rejected: "This has knocked into a 'Cocked Hat' (used without Dr. Johnson's authority) a plan and a hope that have been sustaining my labors and anticipations upon more than any others for more than two years."<sup>4</sup>

The next day Richard W. saw his Uncle George Thatcher, superintendent of the Utah-Idaho R.R., and asked if he might have any job open on the railroad. His motive being not so much that he wanted a job as to "keep myself posted on that which might be of benefit to me." His uncle informed him

<sup>1</sup>Young, op. cit., 5.

<sup>2</sup>I dem

<sup>3</sup>I dem

<sup>4</sup>Ibid., 7.

that they needed a telegraph operator in Ogden, the wages being about \$50.00, and even possibly as high as \$75.00 per month.<sup>1</sup>

Fortified with this prospect, Richard W. determined to discuss it with his grandfather; but each time an opportunity arose, his courage failed. He regretted, on each such occasion, "my exceeding and unprecedented weakness...."<sup>2</sup>

These were days of calamities for this young man. Not only had his professional aspirations been "knocked into a 'Cocked Hat,' but it was also a time of disappointment and rejection in love. Richard W. had been enamored for several years with Luella Cobb. He worried and fretted when Rudger Clawson, who although a fine friend and person, was paying undue attention to Luella. His diary observes: "I am waiting a favorable opportunity to affect a change in this condition of affairs." But being a man of action, Richard sought an "expression of her feelings toward him." "I am actuated by feelings of friendly regard, but nothing further," she politely informed him. He thanked her for her frankness in saving him from a "wild goose chase" without implying that she was the goose.<sup>3</sup>

Rising to the occasion Richard W. philosophizes: "I never had permitted my feelings to reach that point at which a rebuff would consign me to the depths of misery." And further: "I find that love enthralis a person--renders supreme above object in life with a few exceptions--a desire to shape or misshape every consideration to suit the exigencies

<sup>1</sup>Ibid., 7-8. This reference includes the preceding quotation.

<sup>2</sup>Ibid., 10.

<sup>3</sup>Ibid., 6,8. It is regrettable that Richard W. did not explain his technique of explanation. This citation includes all the information about the Luella Cobb incident.



of his love affair. He cannot take a bold step in quest of any object because bound by the thongs of a lovely form and a pleasing disposition, coupled with an attractive face. In an interesting contrast of self admission and manly resolution, he concludes: "[I] found myself incessantly sighing--and retiring with a heavy heart. But have shuffled it off."<sup>1</sup>

On the 24th of August 1877 both Richard W.'s mother and grandfather, Brigham Young, were stricken with "cholera morbus." On the 25th he writes: "Grandfather about the same--still seriously low. Mother much worse and unable to eat...." For the 26th he indicated that his mother was "suffering intensely." On the 27th "Grandfather not so bad but alternately sinking and rising."<sup>2</sup> Then on the 28th he reported:

About 7 O'Clock and just as I had arisen from bed - I heard Aunt Eliza Snow informing the Iceman that Grandfather was in a very critical condition...During the day... [he] continued dangerous - although he was occasionally quite easy and seemingly free from great suffering....Inflammation had set in...and it was found necessary about 12 [in the evening] to perform an operation upon his bowels as a last resort of medical aid.

Throughout the entire period of his sickness prominent elders and apostles were in his room administering to him--to which administrations he frequently responded with a hearty amen - indicating that it was his desire to live and that he was exercising his almost indomitable will to sustain his energies.<sup>3</sup>

For the 29th of August he continues:

<sup>1</sup> Ibid., 9-10, includes his philosophical sentiments on love.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid., 12-15. See Appendix I for detailed account.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid., 15-16

...It became patent to all that he was gradually but inevitably sinking....Nearly the entire day and night of the 28th I was in his room rendering every assistance in my power, hoping and praying....About 3 P.M. it became apparent...that he was rapidly approaching his death.... He sank from one stage of dissolution to another so easily and rapidly - that at one minute past four (4) he rendered up his spirit...

...His countenance assumed the blanched palor of death - all was quiet in that room of sorrow save the sobs and mourns and sighs of a grieved and bereft family and circle of friends.... It is gratifying to think that he departed comfortably - and placidly - evidently undisturbed by that pain which had been racking his body during his illness. ....I had the great satisfaction of fanning Grandfather - some eight hours on the 28th - a great time during the night - of the 28 & 29. And of performing this act the only relief which could be rendered him at the time of his demise, so I was removed but a few feet of him at the side of his bed when he died. ....Remaining at the sad spot only long enough to efface the marks of pain and sorrow around my eyes I hastened to comfort mother - in this hour - when - she must have felt as I did, that we had lost the greatest friend and benefactor we had....

Shortly before 11:00 A.M. on the 2nd day of September Richard W. gathered with other relatives at the Lion House, and formed in a line by family relationship as follows: Brothers of the deceased, wives, daughters and daughters-in-law, sons and sons-in-law, grandchildren and other relatives. Once assembled, the "immense procession" started to the Tabernacle, arriving there at 11:20 A.M. Inside and out of the Tabernacle there were an estimated 23,000 people. At 12:00 noon George Q. Cannon "announced that if the congregation would attend, the services would commence." After talks and prayers by prominent Church authorities, the procession formed behind the 10th Ward brass band, and all moved slowly towards the cemetery to the strains of the "Dead March in Saul."<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Ibid., 17. Richard W.'s mother later recovered, but never appeared to be strong physically.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid., 18-19.

Shortly after his Grandfather's death Richard W. again encountered his Uncle George Thatcher, and queried him about a job. Subsequently his uncle told him that he could begin October 15th at the Ogden, Utah Agency.<sup>1</sup>

Shortly afterwards Richard W. drew up some basic objectives and mileage markers by which he could chart his life.<sup>2</sup> His diary records:

I will venture a few words as necessary to plan out my future career. It may seem very egotistical on my part to assume so much, but I am ambitious and have ideas that by living an honest, upright, and conscientious life, I may rise to positions of worth and usefulness in the community.

He felt that he would be able to climb the ladder of positions. Eventually he anticipated that he would be called on a mission to "some foreign land" for the Church, after which he doubted if he could get his old job back. He would, therefore, have to depend upon what capital he might have been able to save, and "launch into some good paying business either alone or in partnership with [Heber J.] Grant or other person."

Integrating religion, politics and profession, he continues:

[While carrying on his business]...I shall slowly and gradually rise in ecclesiastical preferment, and probably politically as well, until I may find myself in the State Legislature.

Then he added:

I think that at some period of the unchequered career I am planning out, I shall write a treatise or so upon the principles of the religion I am convinced to be divine, or at least strive to refute many or some of the erroneous notions existing concerning it. It is my intention to labor for salary only so long as necessary to enable me to lay aside a neat capital, etc., etc."

But Idealism was hard pushed after a short time on the new job. He reports<sup>3</sup> that he was:

---

<sup>1</sup>Ibid., 23-24.

<sup>2</sup>Ibid., 23-25.

<sup>3</sup>Ibid., 26-27.

...working away in the office tugging away over weekly reports and...trying to give general satisfaction, but I am afraid succeeding only in giving dissatisfaction, or causing it. This is a hard world, a grabbing, avaricious, selfish and bigoted combination of sensient matter....  
[where each person] is trying to better his own position in life at the expense of his unfortunate neighbors.

A person may think he has numerous friends who would sacrifice their all to assist him from a precarious place, but oh! how fallacious. But bring your boasted and boasting friends to the test and you are pained to see they do not know you, have no remembrance of one they could profess the strongest friendship for in luxury and comfort, but whom they scorned to know fallen and low.

How careful we should be not to injure the feelings of fallen friends and acquaintances....

Then in a more optimistic note, he concludes, "[I] look for promotion sometime in a few months. Don't know when."

Quite likely the apparent disappointment and frustrations evidenced in the above quotes were rooted in some of his recent disappointments and sorrows. It is questionable whether he really had much motivation for railroad work initially. At least from his journal Richard W. manifested much stronger determination in his projected West Point career.<sup>1</sup>

But there were other more pleasant activities. One that was prominent in his early life was the Wasatch Literary Association. He had been a member since 1874, and though he had dropped out two years later, he maintained his friendships and interests in the group, and occasionally attended their meetings. Besides giving each of the members an excellent opportunity to contribute samples of their own work, hear the work of literary masters, it was an important social organization. Many of its members became prominent in professional, political and church duties. Its membership included Orson F. Whitney,

---

<sup>1</sup> Infra, 20, 21.

future Governor Heber M. Wells, John T. Caine Jr., the artists, J. W. Clawson and H. L. A. Culmer, and actors Harry Emery and L. A. Cummings; church leader Heber J. Grant, and architect D. C. Young, plus many others.

The "Budget Box" was the medium whereby the works of individual members were introduced to the group. Contributions to the Budget Box had to be anonymous. Through this technique much hazing and humor was brought forth on unsuspecting members, and especially new members.<sup>1</sup> The flavor of the organization can be felt in the letters of Heber M. Wells to Richard W. when the latter was in exile from literary inspiration during his residence in Mantel, Utah. For the letter dated February 10, 1876, Heber writes:<sup>2</sup>

Our meeting last evening was held at Rett's with no unusual ceremonies. Of course, there were the numerous flashes of wit, cutting sarcasms, and bad puns, which are coincident with our meetings, but aside from this, nothing occurred to mar the monotony of our proceedings.

Harry Culmer is now a member and on next evening he may be prepared to be slandered, laughed at, abused and calumniated pleasure of the budget box writers. He must go through the "kinks." I have, and you have, and why should he be exempt. Let us rally and pour such hot words into his burning ears as will scorch his very inners, and make his blood run cold with fiery indignation. I will ransack the remotest corner of my cranium for wit, and coupling this with all the eloquence my soul possesses, I'll let him have it," loud and long, egad I will!

....Richard, "there's one little matter I'd like to speak to you about," which, if you'll give me leave, I'll mention. Recent advices from Mantel state that you are growing "very fond on" Janey. Methinks I see a shy blush steal o'er thy rigid visage at the mention of that name. Well, freeze to her, freeze to her, it is difficult to do better, but as Samuel Weller beautifully says: "I didn't think yew'd a' dun it, I din't think yew'd a' dun it."

---

<sup>1</sup>Program: "Reunion of the Wasatch Literary Association," held June 18, 1890; and the newspaper account of the reunion of Program in personal scrapbook of Richard W. Young.

<sup>2</sup>See Appendix II for complete letters.

More sympathy and advice is given to Richard W. by Heber on the 4th of March 1876.

Well, R. W., what do you know? What is the excitement in Manti? And how is your girl?

Egad! I pity you. Bert told me the other day that you have got to stay in that isolated hole for three months more. Is that so? Young man, you have my sympathy.

Another important form of entertainment to Richard W. was the Salt Lake Theatre.<sup>1</sup> His Journal has many references to his attendance there. For instance, on the 13th of August 1877 he saw Mme. Bernard's Opera "Maritan A." The following night he saw the opera, "Bohemian Girl." As previously, Brigham Young graced the productions with his presence. "This gem of harmonic production stands unexcelled in the long catalog of musical productions...." The next evening he saw Tony Pastor's excellent variety troupe.<sup>2</sup>

A third and important literary influence in Richard W.'s life was reading. The nature of his father's library has been alluded to already.<sup>3</sup> August 13, 1877 he finished reading Ivanhoe, and began reading Kenilworth. In evaluating Sir Walter Scott, he said:

I am disposed to believe that... [he] is the finest novelist who ever wrote English. Abounding as all his works do with well drawn character--and abundantly copious with figures of rhetoric, with pith and plot, with a distinct and characteristic

---

<sup>1</sup>The Playhouse was completed on March 8, 1862. Many productions of local talent and traveling troupes were given on its stage. Besides being its owner, Brigham Young was a frequent spectator. Samuel Bowles, editor of the Springfield (Mass.) Republican is quoted by Whitney: The playhouse is a "'rare triumph of art and enterprise....No eastern city of one hundred thousand inhabitants'...possessed' so fine a theatrical structure.'" Salt Lake City then had about 20,000 people. Orson F. Whitney, Popular History of Utah (Salt Lake City, 1916), 202-03.

<sup>2</sup>Young, op. cit., 4.

<sup>3</sup>Ibid., 8

mode of conversation for each person introduced--his work cannot but prove entertaining to a lover of literature..."

Richard W. records numerous instances of his having heard religious sermons, and he occasionally quotes scriptures to illustrate or substantiate his points. One concludes then that the scriptures themselves provided an important literary influence in his life.

From the style of Richard's journal one might well conclude that he was writing for expressed purpose of future publication. Yet as one reads through his correspondence and published articles and pamphlets of his later life, it would seem only fair to conclude that the lofty style displayed in his writing and recorded speeches was one of his trademarks - an integral and natural part of his personality.<sup>1</sup>

One is struck with the diversity of his interests and activities. Between the 18th of August and 8th of September 1877 he saw three baseball games, and participated in one baseball practice himself.<sup>2</sup> The game of 25 August was between the Deserets (Gentiles)<sup>3</sup> and the Red Stockings (formerly the Rough and Readys - the Mormon team). The game joyfully resulted in favor of the Reds with a score of 22 to 14." On the 8th of September, however, the former champions, the Deserets, nipped a closely contested game after "a series of unfortunate errors" on the part of the Red Stockings. The final score, 6 to 3: "an excellent termination."

The short journal of Richard W. Young is sprinkled with references to the world situation. He notes on the 16th of September, for example, that the "Russians so far have been discomfited in every principal

<sup>1</sup>See appendices for examples of his writing.

<sup>2</sup>Young, op. cit., 10, 13, 14, 21. According to Colonel Truman R. Young, son of Richard W., Richard W. and Heber J. Grant played on an organized baseball team together. Colonel Young to L. P. Murray, 16 June 1959.

<sup>3</sup>Non-Mormons.

engagement they have fought with their Moslem enemies the Turks. The hordes of Russia find an equal opponent in the Turkish prowess."<sup>1</sup>

No study of Richard W. Young would be complete without reference to one of the vital factors of his life: religion. He evaluated his own position by saying: "...I am at present a staunch Mormon, striving to do just as near right as the spirit of innate worldliness will permit."<sup>2</sup> Then, as previously indicated,<sup>3</sup> he felt that sometime he would undertake a defense of his religion, or at least "strive to refute many or some of the erroneous notions existing concerning it." Although one certainly does not get the impression of insincerity or disinterest in his faith, the objectivity of the last quoted statement is most interesting. This is especially true in view of his religious heritage, which included forced migrations and persecutions, Johnston's Army and the Utah War, and within the span of his own recollection, the initial stages of Utah "Reconstruction."<sup>4</sup> Very likely at this point in his life, as substantiated

<sup>1</sup>Young, op. cit., 23.

<sup>2</sup>Ibid., 5.

<sup>3</sup>Supra, 11

<sup>4</sup>For background references and authorities see: Leland H. Creer, Utah and the Nation (Seattle, 1929); Hamilton Gardner, Pioneer Military Leaders of Utah, and the Utah Territorial Militia, both documents are unpublished manuscripts in the Utah State Historical Society (Salt Lake City); Andrew Love Neff, History of Utah, edited by Leland H. Creer (Salt Lake City, Utah); B. H. Roberts, A Comprehensive History of the Church (Salt Lake City, 1930), Vol I-V; Tullidge, op. cit.; Whitney, op. cit., I-IV.

Colonel Gardner says this on Reconstruction: Thus "ensued the darkest period in Utah History. In a controversy somewhat reminiscent of the Reconstruction period in the South, but having as its ostensible basis certain religious practices of the Mormons, the Federal Government carried out in Utah what came to be the 'Crusade.' The Territorial Militia [The Nauvoo Legion] itself became a target. In 1870 Governor J. Wilson Shaffer prohibiting it from participating in drills, musters or annual camps. And at last, in 1887, the Congress abolished the Nauvoo



by his journal, he had not been the object of any personal attacks resulting from his religious views.<sup>1</sup>

In church activities he served in the Sunday School organization of his own ward; was a member of the ward choir, acted as assistant secretary on the Central Committee of the Young Men's Mutual Improvement Association, being designated as a home missionary in the last named organization. He also records occasional references of work on the buildings in the Tabernacle block.<sup>2</sup>

A late subject introduced in Richard W.'s journal is announced in this manner: "I think I am Struck, the subject this time is Minerva Richards--a youthful young lady about 15 years old - but nice, 'I guess

Legion." Utah Territorial Militia, 7.

Judge James B. McKean carried on a legal campaign where Shaffer let off his military offensive. In History of Utah Whitney says: "With jurisdiction of the Probate Courts so limited and curtailed as to throw most of the criminal and civil cases that might arise into the District Courts, and those courts presided over and officered," he maintains "by men working all but confessedly in the anti-Mormon cause with power to select juries from which every Mormon was carefully excluded...the conspirators were jubilant...and the rights and liberties of the people at large in imminent jeopardy...." (Vol II, 565). Brigham Young arrested twice for polygamy, indicted for murder, and spent one night in the penitentiary five days before the end of Judge McKean's struggle in the 'Federal Authority versus Polygamic Theocracy.'" (Whitney, History of Utah, Vol II, 551, 562, 565, 592, 599; Popular History, 279).

<sup>1</sup>A second reference to possible religious problems discussed by Richard W. was introduced with a note of praise for Pope Pius IX (1846-1878) for his efforts to maintain peace. He points out the spiritual leader of Catholicism, though deprived of much of the Church's former temporal possessions, was still powerful - "for few things appeal to a man's sense of duty and allegiance as his religious convictions--as cite for example our people.... How far his word [Governor Emery's] extend...if his commands conflicted with religious faith. Not far." Richard W. is silent in his journal about the successes of Governor Shaffer and Judge McKean.

<sup>2</sup>Young, op. cit., 10-2, 14-, 25.

not'....The cutest among the girls, I fear I am growing to think so."<sup>1</sup>  
 The first time he met Minerva was February 7, 1878. He had come down from Ogden, Utah, and was making some "calls" on young ladies in company with Uncle, Second Lieutenant, Willard Young and other friends. The other boys left early, but Richard W. remained. Minerva recalls the occasion by saying:

At this time I had never seen or heard of him. During the evening I sang for him--one of the popular song hits of the day, "Pretty as a Picture." ...I have...the idea that the song was largely responsible for the eventual winning of my husband....He said that the way and manner in which I sang it added indescribable charm. When he left he made a remark that left me with the impression that he was really attracted to me. As for me--well, he did make a deep impression on me."<sup>2</sup>

Willard Young was then on temporary duty in Salt Lake and occasionally saw Minerva. On such occasions he "invariably asked me if I didn't have some message to give to Dick. My reply was: 'Yes, give him my kindest regards.' During our many years of married life together this message was a favorite byword between us. It also had the effect of bringing him to call upon me shortly thereafter."<sup>3</sup>

Corresponding with this favorable turn of events, Richard had won favorable recognition on his railroad job by formulating a new freight classification and tariff schedule. Because of this contribution he anticipated a promotion to position of General Passenger and Freight Agent.<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Ibid., 29

<sup>2</sup>Minerva Richards Young, Reminiscences, Family Collection (Salt Lake City).

<sup>3</sup>Ibid., 4

<sup>4</sup>Whitney, History of Utah, IV, 560.

During this period George Q. Cannon, an apostle in the Mormon Church, was the territorial representative in Congress. After Willard Young had graduated from West Point in 1875, two young men had in succession gone to the Military Academy. The first became dissatisfied after the year and resigned, and the second did not pass the entrance examinations. A choice, therefore, had to be made to fill the vacancy existing for the Class of 1882, the entrance date of which was in July 1878.<sup>1</sup> In view of Richard W.'s previous interests his name came under advisement as a potential candidate for the position.<sup>2</sup> Orson F. Whitney states that Richard W. was offered the appointment initially but turned it down, since at that time he believed that he was in line for promotion mentioned in the previous paragraph. Shortly after his refusal, the Union Pacific Railroad took over the Utah and Northern Railroad. Believing that his chances of advancement would be much impeded in such a large company, Richard W. hastened to re-apply for the West Point vacancy. According to his journal this course of action harmonized with the wishes of the Church leaders.<sup>3</sup> This was important since the deliberations over who should fill the vacancy were apparently being conducted by the Council of the First Presidency of the Church and the Quorum of Apostles.<sup>4</sup> Contemplating the alternatives of their decision Richard W. wrote: "Whatever is, is right," says Pope, and upon the same subject the Almighty reveals in the Doctrine and Covenants "that he is not pleased with man unless he acknowledges the hand of God in all things" - and so both in accordance with

---

<sup>1</sup> Richard W. Young, op. cit., 31-32.

<sup>2</sup> Supra, 6

<sup>3</sup> Richard W. Young, op. cit., 32.

<sup>4</sup> Ibid., 31-32

religion and philosophy I am resolved to become reconciled to my course, always striving to take the right course."<sup>1</sup>

One of his real concerns at that time was the status of his mother. Awaiting, nervously, the news of his "fate" from his Uncle "Briggy," son of Brigham Young and an apostle in the Church, his mother's welfare loomed a vital consideration. His uncle informed him the Council of the First Presidency and the apostles had selected Richard W. and that Richard's mother would receive necessary assistance during his absence.<sup>2</sup>

The triple circumstances of the non-completion of Willard Young's immediate successors at West Point, the provision for assistance to his mother, and the choice of the Church leaders was interpreted by Richard W. as not only the imposition of "fate," but also a "special decree of Providence that... [had] booked [him] for West Point."<sup>3</sup>

In typical fashion he recorded his reasons now for wanting to go to West Point:

1. "Father's strong wish that I should go, and one he entertained at the time of his death."
2. "Grandfather's approval of my going."
3. "The fact that the 12 apostles wish some young man of good Mormon standing to go and unanimously chose me."
4. "The much more good that I will be capable of doing on the earth."
5. "The name and reputation - and prestige it will give me from one end of the territory to the other and especially if I graduate well."

---

<sup>1</sup>Ibid., 31. The Doctrine and Covenants of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints (Salt Lake City, 1957), Section 59, verse 21.

<sup>2</sup>Richard W. Young, op. cit., 32.

<sup>3</sup>Idem.

<sup>4</sup>Ibid., 33-34

6. "It will give me my education upon which I can put the requirements for a good civil engineer with little more study."

7. "Military men may be some day of use in this community as in all communities."

8. "It places a fellow 'way up' socially and lends a great many points to his standing with the girls."

9. "Now I am too young to be placed in any position of great responsibility. Four years will both give me an education and a little more age which added to what reputation I may have gained will throw me a year or so further ahead in any business I may choose than I could advance by remaining here."

10. An anticipation that after four years his mother's situation of having been inadvertently omitted from Brigham Young's estate will have been resolved, and that she then would be adequately provided for.

His appointment, from George Q. Cannon, was dated March 26, 1878.<sup>1</sup> He quit his job as agent of the railroad in Ogden to prepare for the entrance examinations, to be held at West Point on June 14th. President John R. Park, of the University of Deseret, was his tutor.<sup>2</sup>

The night before his departure Minerva and Richard W. said their "goodbyes".... "While both of us realized that four years was a long time ahead of us, we each promised to wait for and be true to the other."<sup>3</sup>

Minerva then continues:

Very early... the next morning I was awakened by the sound of pebbles being thrown at my bedroom window. I couldn't imagine what it was, but on going to the window, I heard his familiar voice saying: 'Nerve, come down. I have a very few minutes before the train leaves.' Hurriedly I slipped on my kimono, quickly dashed some water on my face, straightened my hair, and in less time than it takes to write this I was down and another goodbye being said.<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> War Department to Richard W. Young, March 26, 1878.

<sup>2</sup> Richard W. Young, op. cit., 36.

<sup>3</sup> Minerva R. Young, op. cit., 4.

<sup>4</sup> Ibid., 4.

Just prior to his departure Richard W. wrote:

I have this faith in going to West Point, that if I need any assistance in my studies and aid to strengthen my resolution and energies [1] there is an Omnipotent Ruler who has covenanted to heed the prayers of those who ask in faith. He said 'If any one lacketh for wisdom let him ask of God who giveth to all men liberally, and upbraideth not and it shall be given him.'"

Thus armed with love and faith Richard W. Young launched out into a new culture and a new world.

---

<sup>1</sup>Richard W. Young, op. cit., 34. The Holy Bible, Authorized (King James) Version (Philadelphia), James 1:5. Richard W. slightly misquoted the verse; it should read: "If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God, that giveth to all men liberally, and upbraideth not and it shall be given him."

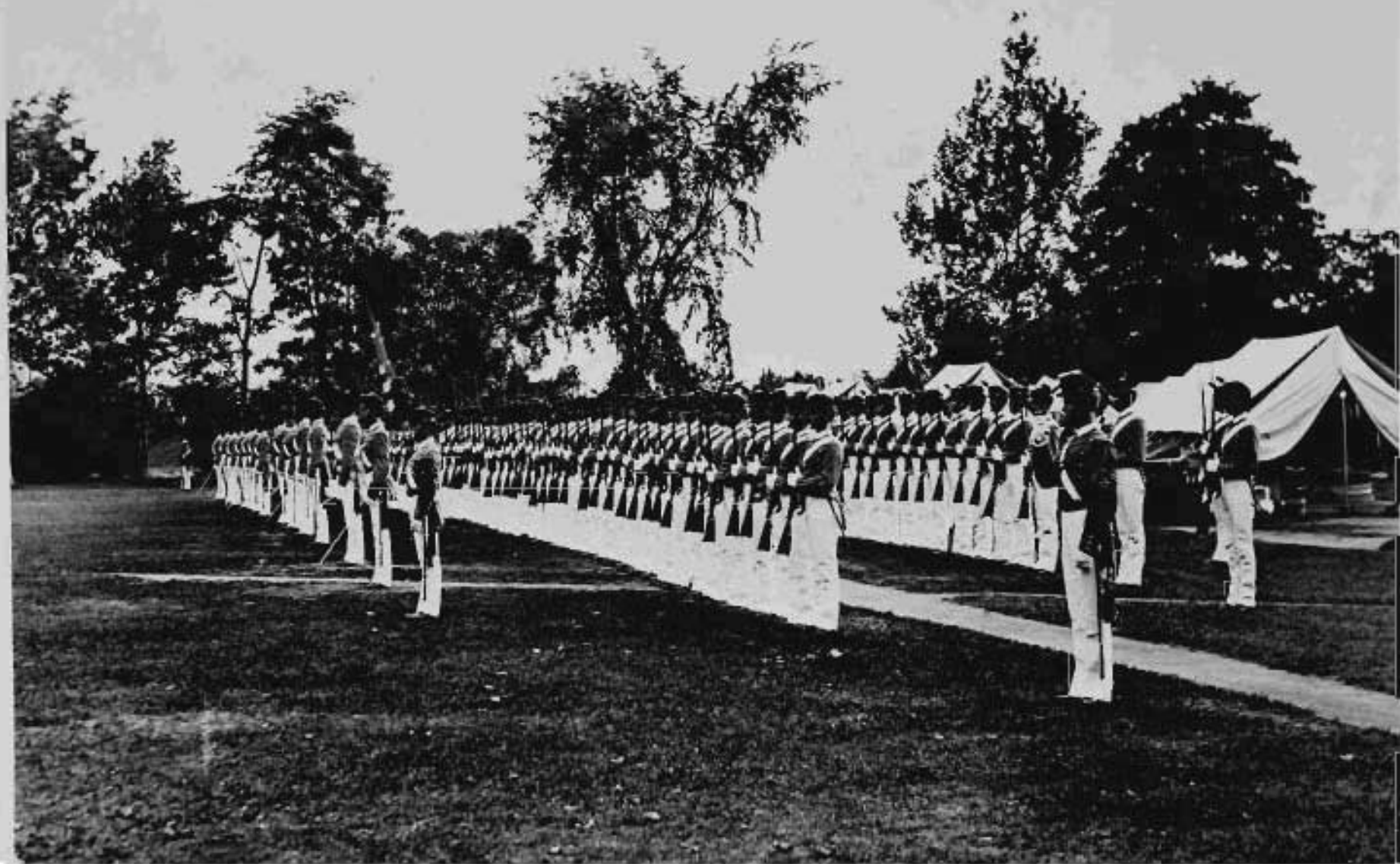
## CHAPTER 11

### THE UNITED STATES MILITARY ACADEMY (1878-1882)

FIG. 3

West Point Parade Formation





## CHAPTER II

### WEST POINT YEARS

In due time I arrived, and the scene then before me,  
Fired my spirit anew with martial ardor and glory;  
The grey coats, brass buttons, the music, the drill,  
The flash of artillery--all sent me a thrill  
Through my whole frame, from my head to my heel,  
Like O'Shanter viewing the witches reel.<sup>1</sup>

Perhaps these were some of the feelings of Richard W. Young on entering the "hallowed" plains of West Point. He had undoubtedly heard much about the Institution from his Uncle Willard Young who had graduated three years previously. But dreaming soon ended. Along with his future classmates he took the physical and mental examinations. After passing he faced the trials of Beast Barracks.<sup>2</sup> Since there is no extant information of his reaction to plebe year,<sup>3</sup> a person is left only to speculation. It is known, however, that Richard W. started out the last man of his class. A cadet roster shows him 132nd and last of the "New Cadets" alphabetically. Such a misfortune would entitle him, normally, to be the last in all formations.

---

<sup>1</sup>Poem written by an unidentified West Point contemporary of Richard W. Young. Filed in personal scrapbook of R. W. Young. Apparently also published in the Baltimore Collegian, titled, "Life at West Point," date unknown.

<sup>2</sup>This is an introductory period of military training for the new cadets in the summer months and prior to the beginning of the academic season. New cadets are often referred to as "Beasts."

<sup>3</sup>Called 4th class year, Plebedom, Plebe Year. During this first year Plebes continue their military and disciplinary apprenticeship. Strict formality between plebes and upperclassmen is required.

With his roommate, John H. Beacom, from Ohio, he weathered the storm of plebe hazing. In the words of the cadet poet just quoted they probably experienced some or much of the following:

...I march with the Plebes to our rooms,  
Through a file of cadets who "saluted with brooms.  
The next week was spent in the trial of mental,  
In questions that seemed to us quite transcendal;  
As for instance, what do two plus two make, and why  
And "when, where, and why did Washington die?"  
Given X-charge, Y-bore, Z-length of a gun  
To find elevation to hit center of a sun?"

Roommate Beacom wrote of this hazing and his evaluation of it:

Here at [West Point] the hazing is purely republican in its results, for it places every man on his merit, and levels all distinctions which birth or "previous condition of servitude" have brought about. Without it, cliques and distinctions, which are detrimental to the best interest of any society, would inevitably arise in the classes. By means of it men may be told their faults without insult, which cannot be done under the protection of friendship. That the reputation of cadets for manliness, for openheartedness, for all that makes them attractive may be sustained, vast improvement must be made on the raw material shipped here from all parts of the country. Military discipline will accomplish much, but such harmless hazing as is usually indulged in does more to transform the raw recruit into a manly and polite cadet than officials and discipline can ever do.<sup>1</sup>

In academic standing he progressed to number 43 in his class by the end of Plebe year. With more diligent efforts, it is to be supposed Young increased his standing by the end of Third Class Year (Sophomore) to 28th man in his class. It is not known whether he escaped the rigors and character building exercised of walking tours. But it is sure that he had thoughts in common with all the rest of the cadets: Furlough! In 1880 just before his first furlough home in two years he wrote to his sweetheart Minerva: "Gen. Schof[Schofield]--our hard hearted superInt-

---

<sup>1</sup> Anonymous contribution to the editor of the Sun, credited in Richard W.'s scrapbook to his roommate Beacom. It strongly suggests an upper-classman's bias, and was probably written long after (in cadet chronological reckoning) he had passed through Plebedom. Scrapbook of Richard W. Young.

endent has decreed that we will not get away from here before the 1st of July: How much later our departure may be, it is impossible to predict. Oh! ain't that simply disheartening to think of waiting so long and then to be so late in leaving and have such a short time at home? I shall see if I can't remedy it someway.<sup>1</sup>

But important things had to be done before the beginning of furlough. The Class of 1880 had to be graduated, which would move Richard W. and classmates up to the exalted post of Second Classmen (Juniors). There was moving that had to be accomplished also. His revered "D" Company's barracks were traditionally used for training the new cadets--"Beasts." This necessitated their moving to a new location. The move is portrayed by Richard W. as: "Picture me in a cadet room in disorder. A carpetless, curtainless, comfortless room in great confusion. The plebes about to report....so our room is all dirt and disorder; a large gaping box is beside me partly filled with the...curtains and other cheap trimmings of a cadet room. Beacom is folding an alcove curtain and cussing...."<sup>2</sup>

Digressing from furlough thoughts he comforted Minerva, who was offended by a previous and brief salutation. By calling her merely "Nerve" he did so, he asserts, "not from any desire of my own but from a deference to what I supposed to be your feelings and wishes. We cannot enjoy the calm of the summer seas unless we have experienced the spring's tempestuous waves: by the bitter we learn to appreciate the sweet...all's well now and let us rejoice in it."<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Richard W. Young to Minerva Richards, June 8, 1880.

<sup>2</sup> idem.

<sup>3</sup> idem.

That Richard W. should be looking forward to seeing Minerva at all, was, as he might have expressed it, "a most favorable stroke of fate." During his first two years at West Point one of his uncles visited him at West Point. This uncle was about the same age as Richard W., and on the way home from England, having completed a mission for the Mormon Church, Cadet Young gallantly asked his uncle "to call and see... [Minerva] and give her a kiss for him. The relative did as requested. He was handsome and attractive, had performed a successful mission, and was blessed with considerable money."<sup>1</sup>

Because Minerva's father, Henry P. Richards, was then on a mission for the Church, the family financial situation became somewhat pressing. In addition, the sorrow resulting from the recent death of Minerva's sister, gave Richard's uncle an opportunity to perform many "kindnesses and an infinitude of little acts of generosity and helpfulness." In addition, he owned one of the finest racing horses in the city and he escorted Minerva to many of the races. When the news reached Richard the previous restriction of weekly letters was forgotten. Although happy to see Minerva entertained, Richard did not "relish the idea of... [his uncle] seeing so much of me and paying me so much attention."<sup>2</sup>

Minerva well knew she would soon have to come to a decision. She liked Dick's relative, was grateful for his kindness and generosity to her family, but "when these tender letters came from the Point I felt unmistakably that I knew where my heart was. There were sleepless nights, loss of appetite and weight. I prayed for guidance and my prayers were answered by an unalterable and inflexible decision that

---

<sup>1</sup>Minerva Richards Young, Reminiscences, Family Collection (Salt Lake City), 5.

<sup>2</sup>Idem.

my true love was across the continent in West Point."<sup>1</sup> This decision was announced to the relative who still persisting promised her a trip to Europe, a Steinway piano, and a lovely home as additional attractions if she would marry him.

The hard hearted<sup>2</sup> General Schofield relented, allowing the cadets to begin their leave on the 26th of June. No time was lost in the homeward journey of Prince Charming. "What a happy two months we had during that summer! How proud I was of Dick! He was tall, handsome, soldierly [,] erect and military in his bearing and poise. I was the envy of a great many of the girls."<sup>3</sup> So much of an attraction was our cadet that he received an invitation from one of Minerva's friends to a party at her home without a corresponding invitation being sent to Minerva. This slight, ignored by both, was the only disquietening experience of the vacation.

With the approach of that "dreaded" departure date, Richard W. gave Minerva a diamond ring, "which I wore at nights. While it was rather generally suspected that we were engaged, we decided that we wouldn't announce it,...and that I should go out with my circle of friends during the coming two years."<sup>4</sup>

Back to academics went Richard W., to another two years stretch before graduation. At the end of Second Class year (Junior), he ranked 19th academically in the Class.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Ibid., 6

<sup>2</sup>Supra 27

<sup>3</sup>Minerva R. Young, op. cit., 6

<sup>4</sup>Ibid., 6-7, for quotation authority and information on the friendly invitation.

<sup>5</sup>Orson F. Whitney, History of Utah (Salt Lake City, 1904), IV, 590.

FIG. 4  
COMPANY STAFF  
CADET COMPANY D

Albert W. Gilchrist  
Second  
Lieutenant

Richard W. Young  
Captain

John H. Beacom  
First  
Lieutenant

Eugene J. Spencer  
First  
Lieutenant





During his cadet career he rose in rank from the non-entity of a "New-Cadet" through private, corporal, sergeant, and eventually in the last year to Cadet Captain of "D" Company. He was the second ranking cadet in the scale of military proficiency.<sup>1</sup> Speaking of his association with Richard W. during this period, Major-General George H. Cameron says of him:

Dear old Dick Young. For three years at the Military Academy he was over me as corporal, first sergeant, and captain of "D" Company, and for many years we sat at the same table in the mess where one solves personal equations. Even as a cadet, Dick was a fatherly soul and universally beloved. Quietly forceful on duty, he found no occasion to bluster at subordinates and he disdained to curry favor with superiors. In hours of relaxation, he was good nature personified; he dearly loved a joke--a clean joke; nobody cared to offend his dignified but unostentatious [sic] devoutness. In the language of today, Cadet Young would have been grade A as "Superior" in all soldierly qualifications.<sup>2</sup>

General Cameron also related that he showed a "marked interest" in the law course that was taught at West Point. This incidental observation was prognostic to Richard's life profession. It is the first reference to his increasing and profound interest and love for law.

At the academy he participated in theatricals and quartet singing; he diligently copied class poems, served on committees for Cadet Hops [dances], and wrote a play for cadet production, entitled: "19th Century Sketch in four acts, or a Camp Episode." It included Miss Sally Draper, "fickle, but charming;" Cadet Pinion Climax, "A first-classman;" Cadet Milton Gush, "a first-classman, his tent-mate," played by Cadet Young; Cadet Swackhammer, "thrown in for ballast;" and others. He also wrote

<sup>1</sup>A cadet is judged on two criterias: One military proficiency, and the other academic. He is given periodic comparative ratings within the class in each category.

<sup>2</sup>"Richard W. Young," Annual Report, Association of Graduates (West Point, 1920), 106.

a tribute to the men turned back from previous classes because of a lack of academic proficiency. This tribute, he says, "should not fail because of a lack of material to toast," since out of the forty-nine men then remaining in the class, eighteen were turn-backs.<sup>1</sup>

So far as known, only one infraction of the rules could be attributed to Cadet Young. This took place on the 20th of June 1881:

West Point, N.Y.  
June 20th, 1881

Report: Absent from parade roll call and parade.

Explanation: I would respectfully state that Cadets Burr, Littell and myself left the ship at about 2:15 P.M. Having rowed leisurely much of the way and made a long stop, we reached the Newburg docks at 4:15.<sup>2</sup>

After allowing two hours for the return trip, plus 38 minutes, for a safety factor, they began the homeward bound trip at 4:30.

The water was yet smooth as it had been during all the afternoon, but we had not proceeded far before a gale sprang up directly against us, which soon lashed the bay into white-capped waves; in which against wind and tide we were able to make but small progress. In order to gain the advantage of placid water we directed ourselves to that bank from which the wind sprang! making which, we found the wind had changed, so that the waves were beating in from the opposite bank. We again crossed diagonally, hoping to find it smoother, but the wind changed with us and we were still in rough water....<sup>3</sup>

This communication to the commandant of cadets marked an inauspicious launching of the new Cadet Captain, Richard W. Young.

There are no known references to Richard W. Young being treated

<sup>1</sup>Miscellaneous programs, announcements, etc., Personal scrapbook of Richard W. Young.

<sup>2</sup>Newburg is located immediately north of West Point, on the Hudson River.

<sup>3</sup>Cadet Captain Richard W. Young to Commandant of Cadets, June 20th, 1881.

unfavorably because of his religious background. It is difficult to believe, however, that "Brigham" would not have been a topic of much discussion, especially during his Plebe year. Although his roommate Beacom extolled the virtues of the Plebian system,<sup>1</sup> its virtues none-the-less are dependent on the maturity of the people administering the system. For one not so mature or so tolerant of others views, the system can be used less creditably.

At home, and throughout the land, the "Crusade" against Mormonism was gaining momentum. During Richard W.'s Plebe year the Supreme Court handed down a decision in the Reynold's case which sustained the Anti-Bigamy Law of 1862. This was a significant set back for the Mormon position. The practice of polygamy was a religious doctrine of their Church. Since the Constitution guaranteed the right of religious freedom, the proscription of polygamy represented a violation of that freedom.<sup>2</sup> Daniel H. Wells, the father of Richard W.'s friend, Heber M. Wells,<sup>3</sup> was sentenced to the penitentiary for two days in May 1879.<sup>4</sup> While walking through a wooded area in Whitefield County, Georgia, July 21, 1879, two Mormon missionaries were surrounded by a group of armed men. The senior companion was Joseph Standing, age 26, and the younger, one of Richard W.'s old competitors in romance, Rudger Clawson, age 22.<sup>5</sup> Joseph Standing was

<sup>1</sup>Supra, 27

<sup>2</sup>Whitney, op. cit., III, 45-6

<sup>3</sup>Supra, p. 12

<sup>4</sup>Joseph Fielding Smith, Essentials of Church History (Salt Lake City, 1950, 581.

<sup>5</sup>Supra, p. 7

shot and killed by the armed assailants.<sup>1</sup>

During this time at West Point, Richard W. did some writing for the Mormon publication, Contributor.<sup>2</sup> The attitude and tone displayed in these articles shows an intensification of feeling far advanced from the detached approach that he had previously shown.<sup>3</sup>

His assertions are strong and definitive. He evidenced Impatience for distortions of what he had experienced as facts. What the cause was of his noticeable "strengthening" of religious position is not definitely known. Three factors seem most feasible. First, his religious position was not a strengthening, but rather of an awakening. Second, this awakening probably was hastened by the inquiries and assertions of upperclassmen during his plebe year. Lastly, events at home, often affecting personal acquaintances, sharpened his sensitivity to the religious problems.

Since his articles were sent home for the home front, they provided valuable development of experience and self expression in an arena which was friendly. One never gets the impression that he goes out of his way to initiate a religious battle. As indicated by General Cameron, in his views of religion, he appeared to others as "dignified" and "unostentatious."<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup>B. H. Roberts, Comprehensive History of Church (Salt Lake City, 1930), V, 563-65. Whitney, op. cit., III, 90-4. After having been led away from the road, they were threatened and promised a beating. Joseph Standing, who had been sitting momentarily, leaped to his feet and yelled: "Surrender." Almost instantaneously he was shot in the head. To the entreaties of some of the mob that they shoot the other missionary, it is reported that Rudger Clawson folded his arms in front of himself and commanded: "Shoot!" This apparently disheartened the group. He was permitted to seek aid to remove his companion.

<sup>2</sup>The Contributor, I-XVII (1879-1896)

<sup>3</sup>Supra, p. 11

<sup>4</sup>Supra, p. 32

Yet at the same time, by seeking a hearing before the editor of the Harper's Weekly and its reading public, he demonstrated no cringing attitude.<sup>1</sup>

Countering the charge that the Mormons are educationally ignorant, that they recruited their converts from among the same classes in Europe, and that the Church leaders preached against education, Richard W. said:

Those who know us and honor the truth can refute this vile charge. The world thinks that the basis of our holy religion is blind ignorance, but we know that we are the disciples of the main source of all wisdom....since God is the author, its every principle is founded in reason.

Let us grow up men and women of thought, thinking for ourselves. Each responsible for his own thoughts and actions. If our religion is worth anything, it is of incalculable value, and no sacrifice is too great for it.<sup>2</sup>

In a second article to the Contributor, "External Strength of Mormonism", Richard W. began with some assorted quotations:<sup>3</sup>

"Send Harper's Bazaar to every Utah wife, and in a few years the Mormon fabric will be a thing of the forgotten past."  
 "Turn loose sectarian ministers upon the benighted people, and open the floodgates of Christian Civilization upon them."  
 "Warp or even break the sacred provisions of the Constitution to rob them of a portion of their faith." "Disfranchise their voters" and subject them to the boundless rapacity of petty-fogging carpet-baggers....

Diminishing these statements to relative unimportance, Richard counters with reasons why his Church and its members would continue to

---

<sup>1</sup>Prior to going to West Point, Richard W. heard some derogatory information about the president of the University of Deseret, John R. Park. After writing President Park about the information, he replied to Richard W. and thanked him for his interest in forwarding the report of the uncomplimentary information. He denied the reported truth of the story. John R. Park to Richard W. Young, November 18, 1826. These are early indications of a characteristic quality of Richard W. rising to the defense of those unjustly accused.

<sup>2</sup>Contributor, op. cit., Vol. 1, 40.

<sup>3</sup>Source of references are not acknowledged. Presumably they are summaries of Anti-Mormon statements made to or known by Richard W.

give the opposition apprehensions: The "arm of God is the mainstay of the Latter-day Saint religion....and inspiration from God; the power of the Priesthood in its active membership; the co-operative role of women; the missionary system of the Church; Church donations; climatic conditions conducive to physical vigor and mental alertness."<sup>1</sup>

In his final year at West Point the following article appeared in the Harper's Weekly:

The late Joseph A. Young, of Utah, Brigham's most talented son, is described by a gentleman who had passed half his life in Utah as a man of noble presence and brilliant talents. "I have," said he, "heard him preach with an eloquence that drew tears from the eyes of his Mormon listeners. In the pulpit he was the embodiment of dignity, grace, and intellectual power. Then, after the audience had departed, I have known him to laugh and make sport of the deluded creatures who had been listening to him. To me he had made no secret of the fact that he was an infidel of the most pronounced type. He took me into the library once and pointed out the elegantly bound volumes of Hume, Voltaire, Paine, Volney, and other distinguished writers of that school. He believed in no existing religion. I reproached him for continuing such deception, and urged him to go forth into the world and win the noble name his abilities entitled him to. "Pshaw!" he replied, with a smile, "the human race love to be humbugged."<sup>2</sup>

As one might expect, Richard W. drafted a letter to the editor of the Harper's Weekly. The draft of this letter, although incomplete and possibly not sent, reveals some well stated sentiments of its author.

I trust you will publish [the letter] since you have regarded my father's characteristics and beliefs as matters of public interest. The allegation that my respected parent was not a "Mormon" was most unwelcome, while, the direct imputation that he was a hypocrite is particularly repugnant. Yet I presume your informant thought to do a gracious act in freeing an intelligent man from the great stain of Mormonism, at the simple cost of writing him down an infidel and hypocrite. If consonant with your rules, I should be thankful to you for the name of the gentleman who spent half a lifetime in Utah, and learned so little.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Richard W. Young "Mormons Educationally," Contributor, 1 (1880), 40.

<sup>2</sup>Harper's Weekly, 26 (January 14, 1882).

<sup>3</sup>~~Incomplete~~ draft of letter. Richard W. Young to the editor of Harper's Weekly, January 29th, 1882.

In March 1882 the Edmunds Bill was signed by President Arthur.<sup>1</sup> This law provided fines and imprisonment for persons who were married into polygamy after that date, or who lived in a polygamous relationship after that date. It voided rights to vote and public office to any polygamist. A belief in polygamy was grounds for challenge for any prospective jurist. Registration and election officials were vacated from office, and a special commission established to canvass election returns for the Territorial Legislature and issue certificates to persons rightfully elected.<sup>2</sup> At least one beneficial result came from this legislation: It provided Richard W. with an unexpected traveling companion on his way home after graduation. This was the man who had appointed him to West Point, George Q. Cannon,<sup>3</sup> a polygamist with four wives and recently disqualified from further service as the Territorial Delegate from Utah.<sup>4</sup>

With glad heart Richard W. could, and most assuredly did, join with the remainder of the class of '82, now reduced to 37, in joyful anticipation of graduation and leave.

After graduating 15th man in his class that splendid and eventful 7th day in June, Richard W. joined with Willard Young<sup>5</sup> and George Q. Cannon, ~~for the~~ homeward journey. He looked forward to a well earned rest, association of friends and family, possible acceptance of a commission in the army and marriage. Richard W. Young was proud and

---

<sup>1</sup>Orson F. Whitney, Popular History of Utah (Salt Lake City, 1916), 344.

<sup>2</sup>Ibid., 344-5

<sup>3</sup>Supra, P. 21

<sup>4</sup>Whitney, Popular History of Utah, 344-5.

<sup>5</sup>From August 1879 to August 1883 of Richard W.'s uncle, Willard Young, served as an instructor at the Academy. Supra, p. 6, 20; Andrew Jenson, L.D.S. Biography (Salt Lake City, 1920), III, 575.

grateful for his West Point training.<sup>1</sup> He long remembered and held dear the associations with his friends of the Corps in general, the Class of '82 in particular. Classmate Harvey C. Carbaugh perhaps spoke for all in these concluding lines:

Then come boys come let us drink to '82  
May her numbers never lesson and always prove true  
May honor and glory and never ending fame  
With a halo surround every man and his name

May the boys of '82 forever be found  
Where wealth and happiness are sure to abound  
May friendship among them ever be true  
Then come boys, come let us cheer for '82.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Interview of Louis P. Murray with Richard W. Young Jr., May 22, 1959.

<sup>2</sup>From scrapbook of Richard W. Young.



### CHAPTER III

ON THE ROAD TO ACCEPTANCE, ARMY TOUR I (1882-1888)

## CHAPTER III

### ON THE ROAD TO ACCEPTANCE, ARMY TOUR I (1882-1888)

When the train carrying Richard W. Young, his uncle, Lieutenant Willard Young and their esteemed traveling companion, George Q. Cannon pulled into Ogden, they were met by a group of prominent men from Salt Lake City, and a concourse of Ogden citizens. The welcoming party included the president of the Mormon Church, John Taylor, future Church presidents, Willford Woodruff, Joseph F. Smith, and Heber J. Grant. The childhood friend of Richard W., Heber Well's father, "General" Daniel H. Wells, Richard W.'s uncle, Apostle Brigham Young, and Apostle Moses Thatcher, and many others were there. After much handshaking and exchanging of personal greetings with the "quiet and modest" George Q. Cannon, the group walked over to the Utah Central Depot. The music of Ogden Brass Band gave a festive spirit to the occasion, both during the march to the depot and while awaiting the departure of the train.<sup>1</sup>

Several stops were made in the small communities between Ogden and Salt Lake where additional groups greeted the returning territorial representative.<sup>2</sup> At Farmington the "juvenile band gave the assemblage a metropolitan air."

Very probably by now the patience of Richard W. was wearing thin, since there is no indication that Minerva was among the welcoming party.

---

<sup>1</sup> Salt Lake Herald, June 28, 1882.

<sup>2</sup> Supra, 38.

When they arrived at Salt Lake a large group of people was assembled, including the Sixteenth Ward Band, which played in the depot, and the Tenth Ward Band which took up the refrain after the crowd had moved away from the depot grounds.

Soon after returning home an important decision had to be made: that was whether or not to accept his commission, or resign and seek after his new professional goal of law school. Heber J. Grant in speaking of this period relates that his friend had sought his advice and help.<sup>1</sup> Richard W. asserted that because of a surplus of lieutenants it would not be dishonorable for him to get out of the service at that time, if he were willing to go into the army during war. Heber J. Grant and friends offered to lend him \$4,000 to \$6,000 for his education, if he followed this course of action. But Richard W., in counselling with Heber J. Grant asked him if he did not think it proper to discuss the situation with the president of the Church, John Taylor. Sustained in this opinion by his friend, Richard W. Young went to President Taylor, and to his great disappointment was advised to remain in the service.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Heber J. Grant, *Gospel Standards*, edited by G. Homer Durham (Salt Lake City, 1941) 267.

<sup>2</sup> *Idem.* Heber J. Grant says that Richard W. Young was blessed and set apart by his grandfather, Brigham Young, to be a missionary during his West Point and army career. Consequently to resign from the service without the blessings and approval of the Church authorities, would have been a dishonorable action, so Richard W. felt. Up to the time of this writing no information has been found which would confirm the assertion of President Heber J. Grant. It is, however, not an uncommon practice to be given blessings before engaging in a special work in the Church, and in some cases, quasi-church responsibilities. Considering the times, the political and religious situation of the people, and Richard W.'s closeness to his grandfather, it would seem more unusual if Richard W. had not received a blessing prior to his departure to West Point. But for Richard W. to have been given a missionary calling in the traditional sense, i.e., an active proselytor, seems highly unlikely. As an officer such action would be highly indiscreet. Also, considering the delicate position of the Church at that time, Brigham Young, unless one considers him unknowledgable--which

On the 19th of July he was sworn into the army as an additional second lieutenant in the 3rd artillery. However, this commission was revoked six days later when he was sworn in as a second lieutenant in the 5th artillery.<sup>1</sup> This provided him with the right to wear impressive and official attire for the all important day of September 5th. On the morning of this day he and Minerva Richards went to the "Old Endowment House"<sup>2</sup> and were married by President Joseph F. Smith.<sup>3</sup> At an evening reception

---

he was not - would have been the first to have recognized that such action on the part of his grandson would not only antagonize many army personnel, lose friends for the Church, but also quite possibly cost Richard W. his job. If one assumes that Richard W. in fact did receive a "call" to be an active proselytor in the army, he must also acknowledge that Richard W. forthwith proceeded to disobey and disregard his calling. No information has been found which refers directly, or by inference, to active missionary activity in the service. Such disobedience on the part of Richard W. Young seems entirely out of harmony with his personality and actions as discovered by this research effort. It appears that Richard W. probably did receive a blessing and perhaps a "calling" to be a missionary by "example." He quite likely was told to remember always his religion, and to be faithful to it, and conditional thereto, promised blessings and assistance from the Lord. This speculative reasoning seems justifiable, since it is difficult otherwise to explain his non-proselyting activity in the service on the one hand, and on the other to account for his continually seeking the advice and counsel of the Church authorities each time before submitting his proposed resignation. Infra, 56, 67. (It should be remembered that according to Richard W., he had been designated to go to West Point prior to the death of his grandfather. Supra, 6. He actually went as a result of a second appointment which was received after his grandfather's death). Supra, 21.

<sup>1</sup>Oaths of offices, July 19th and 25th. "Richard W. Young," microfilm records, General Services Administration, National Archives.

<sup>2</sup>This building was used for sacred ceremonies and marriages prior to the completion of the Salt Lake Temple. It was torn down approximately three years before the dedication of the Salt Lake Temple. Joseph Fielding Smith, Essentials In Church History (Salt Lake City, 1950), 607.

<sup>3</sup>Deseret News, September 6, 1882. Joseph F. Smith was president of the Twelve Apostles.

"Dick wore his 5th artillery uniform and my dress was a combination of heavy white and brocaded satin trimmed with pearl beads and slippers of the same material, which were made in New York."<sup>1</sup>

A reception held in the evening at the bride's parents witnessed the assembling of a host of relatives and friends. The utmost sociability prevailed, and the affair, while not wanting in elegance, was as free and pleasant as any person could have desired. The evening--passed in looking at the beautiful presents, in lively conversation, and in partaking of the elegant repast...was all too short for the happy and delighted friends; and when they did turn to depart, it was with a renewal of the sincere wishes and fervent congratulations which had been extended from all quarters during the evening. The future is as bright as the happy pair themselves could desire; and that it remain so always is the sincere wish of the Herald.<sup>2</sup>

On the 18th of the same month, September, they boarded the train in Salt Lake City, bound for New York City. Before reporting into duty at Fort Columbus, Governor's Island they went up to West Point and spent the last week of their leave with Willard Young, and his bride, Harriet ("Hattie") Hooper.<sup>3</sup> Said Minerva happily and proudly:

Our week at the Point will never be forgotten. In view of Dick's recent graduation and the fact that he was so favorably known, we had a great many callers. This famous and wonderful spot, of which I had heard so much and read so much in Dick's letter, with its romantic walks, the majestic Hudson River winding past, the historic buildings, "Flirtation Walk"--they all seemed familiar to me, and were now actualities.<sup>4</sup>

After a short time in temporary quarters Richard W. and Minerva moved on to Governor's Island. Quite like many other young army couples, Minerva took their limited funds and went shopping for furniture. What

<sup>1</sup>Minerva Richards Young, Reminiscences, Family Collection (Salt Lake City).

<sup>2</sup>Salt Lake Herald, June 6, 1882.

<sup>3</sup>Minerva Richards Young, op. cit., 8. Harriet Hooper, daughter of William Henry Hooper, Territorial Representative in Congress from 1859-73. Orson F. Whitney, History of Utah (Salt Lake City, 1904). IV, 667.

<sup>4</sup>Minerva Richards Young, op. cit., 8.

What she lacked "in the way of furniture" she made up for by using large boxes from the commissary, which she said, "I trimmed with white cotton flannel and broad bands of turkey-red material--artillery like."<sup>1</sup>

When Richard W. reported into Fort Columbus, Governor's Island, General Winfield Scott Hancock, "Hancock the Superb", was in command of the department of the East. Minerva states that Captain Joshua A. Fessenden was her husband's battery commander.<sup>2</sup> This brother of the Maine politician, Sam Fessenden, heard that Richard W. was desirous of getting out of the army and taking up the profession of law. "He very considerably permitted him to enter Columbia College" to study law. Richard W. took care of his assigned army duties in the morning, then would catch the boat to Manhattan and the elevated to school each afternoon. He finished his law course in 1884. Among the 188 members in his class, the future Chief Justice of the Supreme Court of the United States, Charles Evans Hughes, was listed.

One cannot read about those busy days of Richard W. and Minerva without having considerable cause for envy. For Minerva there was all of Manhattan to explore. Since Richard W. was in school each afternoon, it made it most convenient for her to accompany him frequently over to Manhattan Island, shop, visit, sight-see, or attend a matinee. After school she often then met her husband and either visited friends, ate supper, took in a play, or went directly to Governor's Island. The trips of the Willard Youngs from West Point were another excellent excuse for expeditions to the Island of enchantment.

In Steinway Hall, Academy of Music and miscellaneous theatres, they heard such performances as Thomas' orchestra, Adelaid Nielson, Patti in

---

<sup>1</sup> Idem.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid., 10

"La Sonombula", Joseph Jefferson in "Rip Van winkle," "The Corsican Brothers," "King Lear" by Salvini, Albani, and many others. Among other things some of the sight seeing expeditions included Saint Patrick's Cathedral - "the largest, grandest and most beautiful Cathedral on the American Continent;" The Metropolitan Museum of Art, the American Institute, Central Park, Madison Square Gardens, Saint Patrick's Day Parade, the opening of Brooklyn Bridge and even the Central Fire and Police Stations.<sup>1</sup>

The number of callers at the home of the Youngs and the number of calls made, particularly by Minerva, and as possible, Richard also, were impressive by their frequent reference. Minerva often recounts in her journal people who took dinner with them, or with whom the Youngs took dinner. These included people on the Post as well as transient home folks, ex-classmates, and friends from Manhattan Island.<sup>2</sup> This intense tempo one might evaluate as impossible, until the discovery in a matter of fact statement, that Richard W. and Minerva had a maid - Mary Flynn.<sup>3</sup> Such entertaining and mutual hospitality sounds a little more understandable, too, with bacon at 12½¢ per pound, fresh beef at 7.9¢ per pound, and ham at 13.5¢ per pound.<sup>4</sup>

Two of their best home friends there were William Clawson and his wife. He later was to become one of Utah's foremost painters. George Q. Cannon visited their quarters and Richard W.'s childhood chum, Heber

---

<sup>1</sup>Minerva Richards Young, Private Journal contains summaries and intermittent entries from the 5th of September 1882 to June 15, 1883; summary from June 16th, 1883 until March 3, 1886, intermittent daily entries thereafter until June 28, 1886 (Fort Columbus, Governor's Island). 2 ff. Minerva Richards Young, Reminiscences, 11.

<sup>2</sup> Idem.

<sup>3</sup> Minerva Richards Young, Reminiscences, 9.

<sup>4</sup> Price list of Subsistence Store, Governor's Island, April 1886, Richard W. Young scrapbook.

J. Grant, stayed with them several weeks. A record of their visitors over the four year period would include a surprisingly large number of Utah's who's who in religion and politics.<sup>1</sup>

Richard W. and his wife were an active part of the social life of the Post. He played a part in a post drama during the Christmas season of 1882--production which proved to be a "great success."<sup>2</sup> Minerva participated in the preparations for the open house held at the Post Church on January 1, 1883. The most frequent callers at the Young's quarters were Captain and Mrs. Fessington, Richard W.'s battery commander. Lieutenant and Mrs. Sawyer came often also, and less occasionally Colonel and Mrs. Beck. The custom of calling was most spectacularly noted in Minerva's Journal entry of March 9: "...Mrs. Fessenden and myself called on the people outside the Fort; made nine calls. R. [Richard W.] and myself called upon Mrs. Brown--a guest of Mrs. Beck's from Fort Hamilton--in the evening."<sup>3</sup>

Two events of major importance to the Youngs occurred at Governor's Island: the birth of their first two children: Margaret, in June 1883 and Mary in October 1885.<sup>4</sup> Had Margaret been a boy, Richard W. and wife would have won the famed class cup.<sup>5</sup>

Even after the children came Minerva and her husband continued their frequent excursions to the City to see theatricals, musicals, etc. They also attended the services of many other churches. Minerva writes that between the 28th of March and the 23rd of May 1886 Richard W. [with herself

<sup>1</sup>Minerva Richards Young, Journal, 2 ff. Reminiscences, 8 ff.

<sup>2</sup>Minerva Richards Young, Journal, 5.

<sup>3</sup>Ibid., 19

<sup>4</sup>Ibid., 25, 28

<sup>5</sup>Minerva Richards Young, Reminiscences, 13.



sometimes as companion] went to seven religious services, other than those of his own. These apparently were Catholic, various Protestant groups, including a Quaker service.<sup>1</sup>

In the first two year period Richard W. spent nearly one half of his normal duty time in school. Minerva says that his schooling at that time was "an unheard of privilege."<sup>2</sup>

Looking ahead at Richard W. Young's life in the year 1882 leaves one wondering at the wisdom of the "old army." Considering the fact that he had declared his intention to get out of the service, it most probably would be an unheard of privilege of the "modern army" as well. Yet in the hindsight of Richard W.'s life, it resulted in great compensations to the Government in quality and quantity of service.

Richard W. Young graduated from the Columbia Law School in the class of 1884.<sup>3</sup> In the same spring, May, he was admitted to the New York Bar at a general term of the Supreme Court.<sup>4</sup> That his legal experience should have been called on so soon was for him a fortuitous occasion. On the 15th of November he was ordered to Washington D. C. to assist Major Asa Bird Gardner, Judge Advocate and ex-District Attorney of New York City, and Mr. Jeff Chandler in the prosecution of Major General David G. Swaim,

<sup>1</sup>Minerva Richards Young, Journal, 31-4

<sup>2</sup>ibid., 11.

<sup>3</sup>Columbia University to Louis P. Murray, 23 June 1959. Girard B. Rosenblatt to Executive Secretart, Alumni Federation, Columbia University, January 2, 1919.

<sup>4</sup>Richard W. Young to the president of the United States, (Through the Secretary of War), January 17, 1886. Major Asa Bird Gardner to Secretary of War, January 1886.

Judge Advocate of the United States Army.<sup>1</sup> During the period that Richard W. was assisting in the trial work, the New York Tribune noted his presence and contributions to the court as follows:

One of the numerous grandsons of Brigham Young is somewhat conspicuous here just now, as an assistant in the Swalm Court martial to Judge Advocate Asa Bird Gardner. This young scion of polygamy is an artillery officer stationed at Governor's Island. He studied law at Columbia College. He is tall and is considered good-looking. He has, of course, but one wife.... Judge Advocate Gardner sent for him to come and assist the prosecution, which in itself is a compliment, as that officer is considered the ablest lawyer in the army. On Thursday Lieutenant Young distinguished himself by his readiness in prompting the Judge Advocate, and as a smile of admiration passed over the ordinarily solemn faces of the uniformed court about the table....<sup>2</sup>

With a vacancy of the army Judge Advocate of the Department of East, Richard W. had the good fortune of being given that job, with the title, "Acting Judge Advocate."<sup>3</sup> A parallel fine recognition and monetary reward came in his temporary promotion to the rank of Captain.<sup>4</sup>

An evaluation of his work and person can be reached from an appraisal of some of the comments that others made of him.<sup>5</sup> In support of his applicat-

<sup>1</sup>Special orders 236. November 15, 1884, Headquarters, Department of the East. Whitney, History of Utah, IV, 561. In this famous trial General Swalm was charged with requisitioning forage for horses which he claimed were his own and which were used in the performance of his official military duties. According to the charges and specifications the supplies were sold for his own gain. (From charge and specification sheet, scrapbook of Richard W. Young).

<sup>2</sup>Reprint of the New York Tribune, February 14, 1885. Journal History of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. February 14, 1885, p. 5. Contains daily and miscellaneous records, and newsclips of interest to the Church. Compiled by the Church Historian's Office, Salt Lake City. Hereafter called Journal History.

<sup>3</sup>Special Orders 50, March 3, 1885, Headquarters of the army, Washington.

<sup>4</sup>All references to Richard W. Young during this period indicate his rank as Captain. After his assignment of acting Judge Advocate he reverted back to the rank of second lieutenant.

<sup>5</sup>In a note attributed to General Hancock in Richard W.'s scrapbook, the General says: "Mr. Young, you have made a very competent adjutant

ion for an appointment as a major in the Judge Advocate's Department,<sup>1</sup>

Major Asa Bird Gardner says of him:

Captain Young's capacity for the office is well known to Major General Hancock. He is industrious, studious, and ambitious to succeed in any duty assigned him. He has excellent judgment and a judicial turn of mind and, as a consequence, has made no mistake as acting Judge Advocate.

When my health became impaired after... [the Swaim case], I knew no one in the Division of the Atlantic whom I could recommend so well qualified for acting department Judge Advocate as Captain Young, and I am happy to add that the recommendation I was called upon to make has proved so satisfactory.<sup>2</sup>

Professor Theodore W. Dwight, Columbia Law College testified of Richard W.'s days as a student as follows: "I found him when here, to be a young man of fine mental powers, a faithful and conscientious student....He seemed to me to possess solid and substantial qualities and advanced judgement. And in fact, to have a judicial turn of mind."<sup>3</sup> Mr. Jeff Chandler evaluated him in this manner: During the Swaim case, where they were associated together "he displayed during that occasion high legal accomplishments, sound judgement, rare industry and a clear perception of legal principles."<sup>4</sup> Major George W. McKee says Richard W.

---

general, and I wish to commend you as a young man of very good judgement, who will be bound to succeed in the army. It's to your credit, too, that you are thought very much of by the officers and soldiers around here; this is a compliment to you particularly as is based on a good record. There is a field for you in the army and if you remain you will get along. In time of war such young men accomplish something while others are simply food for bullets." This note is not dated and is unsigned.

<sup>1</sup>Richard W. Young to the president of the United States, through the Secretary of War, January 6, 1886.

<sup>2</sup>Major Asa Bird Gardner to the Secretary of War, January 6, 1885.

<sup>3</sup>Theodore W. Dwight to Secretary of War, January 18, 1886.

<sup>4</sup>Jeff Chandler to Secretary of War, January 2, 1886.

"is a man of fine habits, most excellent ability, and universally respected. He cannot fail to do credit to the country and the army in any position of responsibility and judgement that may be entrusted to him."<sup>1</sup>

Richard W.'s request for an appointment as a Judge Advocate also included a request that he be given the rank of major. Despite the fact that he had been filling the position of a major while the acting Judge Advocate in the Department of the East of the army, one still cannot escape the observation that such a promotion would have jumped him through two intervening grades: First Lieutenant and Captaincy: ambition par excellence. Only one thing was lacking, however, and that was the acceptance of his application.

After the death of General Hancock in 1886, General John M. Schofield, the "hard hearted" superintendent of Richard W.'s cadet days at West Point,<sup>2</sup> requested that Richard W. be retained as Acting Judge Advocate, even though a permanent Judge Advocate, Major H. P. Curtiss, was projected to replace Richard W., General Schofield further requested that Richard W. be retained until "it is found by experience that his services can conveniently be dispensed with."<sup>3</sup> The Secretary of War concluded the issue also by directing that Richard W. be retained only until the arrival of Major Curtiss.<sup>4</sup>

Orson F. Whitney reports that Richard W., at the suggestion of General Hancock and the request of the Military Service Institute, wrote a work entitled: Legal and Tactical Considerations Affecting the Employment

<sup>1</sup>Major George W. McKee to Secretary of War, January 20, 1886.

<sup>2</sup>Supra, 27.

<sup>3</sup>General Schofield to Adjutant General, July 15, 1886.

<sup>4</sup>Adjutant General to General Schofield, July 20, 1886.

of the Military in the Suppression of Mobs.<sup>1</sup> Despite its having been published two years later, Richard W. very probably started work on it in 1886 or before.<sup>2</sup> Besides the valuable information it provides, it also furnishes some noteworthy additional insights into the personality of Richard W. Young. Speaking of the importance of a soldier's work with mobs, he says:

Soldiers must not think that the quelling of riots is an easy matter. It is true that there is little of the heroic in contending against a ragged mob armed with paving-stones; that it is far less satisfactory to be crushed to earth in the shadow of a tenement by a brick bat hurled from no one knows where, than to fall wounded upon some battlefield, destined to become historic. But after all, there is not a more vitally important duty than the suppression of a lawlessness that threatens the stability of our institutions and the safety of our homes. The problem is quite as difficult as it is important, being one of the hardest tasks that falls to the lot of the soldier.<sup>3</sup>

When one recalls that during this same time period Labor Unions were just beginning to make their weight felt, his opinion of labor demonstrators is impressive.

The fact that the soldier...may be certain that not one-fifth of the lawless element confronting him have any claims to being honest workingmen, should render agreeable and otherwise disagreeable duty.<sup>4</sup>

Much of the spirit of the pamphlet is cast from the following view of Richard W. of the nature of mobs:<sup>5</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Richard W. Young, Legal and Tactical Considerations Affecting the Employment of The Military in the Suppression of Mobs (New York City, 1888). Hereafter called Mobs.

<sup>2</sup>General Hancock died February 10, 1886.

<sup>3</sup>Richard W. Young, op. cit., 69

<sup>4</sup>Idem.

<sup>5</sup>Although many substantiating references are cited, one feels that these are the genuine views of Richard W.

Mobs are, from their constituent elements, peculiarly liable to dejection or elation; they slink into their hiding places or swarm into the streets directly as they fail or succeed. Without discipline they can neither be checked in the excesses that follow a victory, nor rallied from the discouragement that follows defeat.

Victorious, or temporized with, the mobber finds a thousand venal wretches at his back; beaten, or energetically handled, he is deserted by his whilesome friends. The fact that there are in society so many professional agitators, so many anarchists, socialists, thieves and cut-throats, who, with the instinct of the vulture, will seek the field of prey, or with the instinct of the rat, desert the sinking ship, renders it absolutely necessary that the mob shall not be trifled with to the extent even of permitting them to seem to be victorious for a single day. This is essential not only as a rule of temporary advantage, but invaluable for the lessons it teaches. The rioter whom a false delicacy and a mistaken sympathy have dealt leniently with, will acquire a taste for the business, which he would scarcely have retained had he received his deserts.<sup>1</sup>

One soon discovers that the author of Mobs speaks from a historical perspective and as just noted, in the light of the emergence of professional revolutionaries and anarchists. Citing the Draft riots in New York in 1863, for instance, that like most riots, if forceful measures had been early applied, many lives or wounds would have been spared.<sup>2</sup>

Richard W. indicates that it is vitally important that the soldier knows the general scope of his authority. "Not only must he observe closely the civil rights of all persons he encounters, but, in his own profession, he must read the exact line between excess and fallur of duty. On the one hand, he may suffer civil and criminal liabilities; on the other court-martial."<sup>3</sup>

Therefore, to meet the demands of timely and forceful action, action which will be within the scope of both military and civil authorizations and

---

<sup>1</sup>Richard W. Young, op. cit., 69-70

<sup>2</sup>ibid., 70-71

<sup>3</sup>ibid., 22.

requirements, Richard W. covers the following subjects: Part I: Legal Considerations. Herein he discusses, at first, when troops may be used; and the types of troops used: Militia and Federal troops. He then covers the "Rules governing the use of troops," in which he discusses subordination of military to civil authority, acting under and giving orders, and firing upon the mob. Finally in Part I he discusses "Martial Law." Part II, "Tactical Considerations," includes "Preliminary Measures," which covers for example, "causes and elements of riots," "Assembly and Movement," etc. He then covers "Contact with the Mob," which describes tactics for street fighting, barricades, and attack and defense of houses. The third and fourth chapters of Part II cover "Miscellaneous Suggestions," and "Movement of Troops by Rail."<sup>1</sup>

Plaudits were received from many sources for his work. James B. Fry, Brevet Major-General, U.S.A., former Provost Marshall General in the Civil War, says: "How an armed citizen--a soldier--may safely and effectively defend the majesty of the law without at the same time violating it, is a question of the first importance. In no volume yet published is that question so thoroughly and so ably discussed as in this monograph, prepared by Lieutenant Richard W. Young, 5th U. S. Artillery...."<sup>2</sup>

Richard W.'s work on Mobs was adopted as one of the major text books in the National Guard of Wisconsin.<sup>3</sup> But a more surprising use came to light from a letter to Richard W. from D. W. Mullan, Commander, U. S. Navy. Commander Mullan related that during his recent command of the U. S. S. Nipsic in Samoan waters, he was the senior American military officer in the vicinity. During their stay there they had many negotiations with

<sup>1</sup> Ibid., Table of Contents page.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid., Preface.

<sup>3</sup> General Order Number 17, June 30, 1888, National Guard, Madison, Wisconsin.

the German officers. "It became my duty to take issue with them on the subject of Marial Law, and I found your pamphlet of the greatest assistance to me....I quoted very extensively from your valuable pamphlet in my correspondence with the German authorities and the substance, I think, had much to do with suppressing many of their contemplated proclamations."<sup>1</sup>

An initial survey of the lasting contribution of Mobs revealed that copies were not in the library of Congress; nor were copies to be found in the army J4G library and the main Pentagon library (both in the Pentagon), or at the law library at West Point.<sup>2</sup> William Edward Birkhimer cites Mobs in his book Military Government and Martial Law.<sup>3</sup>

Air Force Colonel Truman R. Young evaluated one of the probable causes for its apparent fadeout as follows: "Since it was not published as a book, a later writer would get hold of it by happenstance only. The subject concerns a specialty--suppression of civil violence--which has been of rare interest to authorities and writers for the past 60 or 70 years."<sup>4</sup> Colonel Young noted the head of the Civil Liason Division, U. S. Air Force, Pentagon, indicated that Richard W.'s approach to "civil disturbances seemed fresh and most current when read within the perspective of the Little Rock situation."<sup>5</sup> In an effort to get a more definitive

<sup>1</sup> Commander E. W. Mullan to Richard W. Young, 28 September 1888.

<sup>2</sup> Colonel Truman R. Young to Louis P. Murray June 16, 1959. Department of Law, United States Military Academy to Louis P. Murray, 22 June 1959.

<sup>3</sup> William Edward Birkhimer, Military Government and Martial Law, 2nd Edition (Kansas City, 1904), 506-67, footnote citations. Colonel Truman R. Young to Louis P. Murray July 7, 1959.

<sup>4</sup> Colonel Truman R. Young to Louis P. Murray 16 June 1959.

<sup>5</sup> Idem.



evaluation of Mobs, it was given to Mr. Frederick Bernay Wiener, who in the opinion of Colonel Young is probably "as well qualified to evaluate it as any man living today."<sup>1</sup> Mr. Wiener indicated that it "is obviously a careful and thoughtful study, and that part two, on Tactical Considerations, which reflects detailed examination of the experience of 1877, is still of great value today."<sup>2</sup>

The continued desire of Richard W. Young to get out of the service again comes to light in a letter written by the president of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, John Taylor, to Richard W., dated 27 June 1884.<sup>3</sup> The spirit of respect which Richard W. has for the word of the Church authorities is evident from the second paragraph: "The spirit you manifest in your communications respecting the question<sup>4</sup> submitted to us we are greatly pleased with, as we are fully assured that whatever our decision may be, it will be agreeable to you."<sup>5</sup>

President Taylor then refers to Richard W.'s desire to be with his friends at home and personally assist his mother. But then indicates: "After careful consideration we have decided that for the present, it will be better for you not to resign your position in the army."<sup>6</sup> He assures Richard W. that his mother will be provided for.

<sup>1</sup>Colonel Truman R. Young to Louis P. Murray 13 July 1959.

<sup>2</sup>Frederick Bernay Wiener to Colonel Truman R. Young, July 10, 1959. Because of a limited time available, Mr. Wiener was only able to give Mobs a brief examination.

<sup>3</sup>See Appendix III for full letter.

<sup>4</sup>Permission to get out of the service.

<sup>5</sup>President John Taylor to Richard W. Young, June 27, 1884.

<sup>6</sup>Idem.

The reasons that President Taylor gives for asking Richard W. to remain in the service eloquently reflects the conditions of the times and the position of the Mormons:

At the present time, as you are aware, our liberties and rights are being assailed with desperate energy. The determination is manifest to destroy us if possible. Already a large portion of our community is deprived of every political right, and the whole body are viewed as only fit for taxpayers. Other encroachments upon our liberties are threatened, and the opinion in some quarters is becoming settled that no Latter-day Saint should have the right either to vote or hold office. Your resignation at such a time as this would be attended, in view of this feeling, with bad effects. Now is not the time for us to resign positions but to hold on to every position that we have or can get to maintain our rights. No greater outrage was ever committed than the passage of the Edmunds Law.<sup>1</sup> It is our right, which should be inalienable, to vote and to hold office and to have a full voice in the election of our own governor and other officers, and of the affairs of government. It is an outrage and a scandalous violation of the constitution to deprive us of this. No act of ours should contribute in any manner to strengthen the view already taken by those who are opposing us that we are not fit to fill any position of trust or honor in the Republic....

Shortly after the receipt of above letter from President Taylor, Richard W. sought a two month leave on the grounds that long and continued illness of his mother made it vital for him to go home.<sup>2</sup> Certainly one can understand his desire to assist his mother personally, and his desire to practice law in the civilian world. But the home religious conditions then and those to come, were not conducive to an easy life. Approximately two weeks before his wedding the Utah Commission, as specified by the Edmunds Law, arrived in Utah.<sup>3</sup> Besides choosing registrars for the coming November election they

---

<sup>1</sup>Supra, 38.

<sup>2</sup>Richard W. Young to Assistant Adjutant General, Division of Atlantic, July 13, 1884.

<sup>3</sup>Smith, op. cit., 593.

proclaimed a polygamous "purity" oath. "...and I do further solemnly swear ( or affirm) that I am not a bigamist or a polygamist; that I am not a violator of the laws of the United States prohibiting bigamy or polygamy; that I do not live or cohabit with more than one woman in the marriage relation...."<sup>1</sup>

August 10, 1884 two Mormon missionaries, and two young male converts, were shot and killed in Cain Country, Tennessee.<sup>2</sup> The natural sorrow and revulsion that this act caused in Utah was certainly not abated when the following communication from Governor Murray of Utah to Governor Bate of Tennessee came to light:

The charges of preaching polygamy do not excuse murder.... Lawlessness in Tennessee and Utah are alike reprehensible, but the murdered Mormon agents in Tennessee were sent from here, as they have been for years, but the representatives of organized crime, and I submit that as long as Tennessee representatives in Congress are, to say the least, indifferent to the punishment of offenders against the national law in Utah, such cowardly outrages by their constituents as the killing of emigration agents sent there from here, will continue.<sup>3</sup>

On the 15th of October 1884, Richard W.'s old friend, Rudger Clawson, was sentenced to four years imprisonment for polygamy. But this was not done until Clawson had said a word or two:

---

<sup>1</sup>Ibid., 594. Quotation from the Test Oath. Another section covered women as well. The Mormons complained bitterly about the carefully worded phrase "In the marriage relationship"; since a libertine living outsided the marriage relationship was not restrained. (Idem).

<sup>2</sup>Whitney, op. cit., III, 258-61

<sup>3</sup>B. H. Roberts, Comprehensive History of the Church (Salt Lake City, 1930), V, 99. Date of Dispatch, August 22, 1884. Roberts cites the following authority for Governor Murray's message: "San Francisco Bulletin to which paper the message was sent as a special dispatch. It is copied into Deseret News Weekly, of September 3, 1884."

Your honor, I very much regret that the laws of my country should come in conflict with the laws of God; but whenever they do, I shall invariably choose the latter. If I did not so express myself, I should feel unworthy of the cause I represent. The constitution of the United States expressly says that Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion or prohibiting the free exercise thereof. (It cannot be denied, I think, that marriage, when attended and sanctioned by religious rites and ceremonies, is an establishment of religion). The law of 1862 and the Edmunds Law were expressly designed to operate against marriage as practiced and believed in by the Latter-day Saints. They are therefore unconstitutional, and, of course, cannot command the respect that a constitutional law would. That is all I have to say, your honor.<sup>1</sup>

In 1885 the Idaho Territorial Legislature passed what was referred to as the Idaho Test Oath. It simply and effectively disfranchised any Mormon who declared his belief in polygamy.<sup>2</sup>

In September 1885 the doctrine of "Segregation" was introduced into Utah Courts by Chief Justice Zane and Judge Powers. By Chief Justice Zane's more conservative interpretation, "a man, for acknowledging, during a period of three years, more than one wife...could be indicted either three times, thirty-six times, or one hundred and fifty-six times.... He could be fined nearly \$50,000 and imprisoned for a lifetime; and that for a mere misdemeanor which Congress had made punishable by a fine not to exceed three hundred dollars and a term of imprisonment not to exceed six months."<sup>3</sup>

By figuring the time increment on a daily basis, the more liberal interpretation of Judge Powers could compel a man to pay \$328,400 and receive a potential sentence of "five hundred forty-seven years and six

---

<sup>1</sup>Smith, op. cit., 599. After spending three years and one month in prison, Rudger Clawson was pardoned by President Cleveland.

<sup>2</sup>Whitney, op. cit., 111 344, (1898).

<sup>3</sup>Ibid., 111, 416.

months."<sup>1</sup>

The results of these and other measures resulted in what is known as an era of exile for many of the ~~Mormons~~, both leaders and followers. "Hunting cohabits" became a frequently heard expression.<sup>2</sup> The president of the Church made his last public appearance on February 1, 1885.<sup>3</sup> He died in exile on the 25th of July two years later.

One of the heaviest blows to fall on the Church was the enactment of the Edmunds-Tucker Bill in March 1887.<sup>4</sup> This law, among its provisions, disfranchised women, and disincorporated the Mormon Church. All property not expressly used for religious worship of God was to be "transferred and escheated to the United States."<sup>5</sup> The Church was permitted to "occupy the tithing office and historian's office, at a yearly rental of \$2,400....The Temple Block was also retained by the payment of a stipulated rent."<sup>5.1</sup>

So as one considers some of the recently mentioned factors of the home front, the thought occurs that Richard W. would be better off back in the more liberal and democratic army atmosphere. Certainly it appears that he had been accepted both socially and professionally.<sup>6</sup> Nor was

<sup>1</sup>Deseret News as quoted by Whitney, op. cit., 418. "Segregation" doctrine was declared unconstitutional, February 7, 1887., ibid., IV, 154.

<sup>2</sup>ibid., III, 333

<sup>3</sup>ibid., III, 343.

<sup>4</sup>Smith, op. cit., 601.

<sup>5</sup>idem.

<sup>5.1</sup>idem.

<sup>6</sup>Minerva mentions one exception only. One of the colonels and his wife on Governor's Island would not call on them, and "took evident delight in pointing out to their friends on the boat [the fact that Richard was a grandson of Brigham Young, and a Mormon]. "This was done," says Minerva, "to the utter amazement and utter disgust of the rest of our friends in the garrison." Minerva Richards Young, Reminiscences, 9-10.

this acceptance at the expense of compromising or degrading his religious position. One indication of this comes from a refutation he sent to the editor of the New York Tribune to an article about the Mormons written by Mrs. Paddock.<sup>1</sup> Like many present day authorities of Russia, who are made so by a short visit to that country, the authoritative Mrs. Paddock enlightens her readers on lawlessness in Utah, and Mormon responsibility for the Utah War and the Mountain Meadows Massacre. Richard W. counters that the early condition of Utah were so devoid of vice and crime that what few policemen there were "grew fat in indolence." But of recent years things were in a state of turmoil. Citing a recent liberal<sup>2</sup> pronouncement of a plan "of tempting Mormon boys to drunkenness and debauchery, and of luring Mormon girls to ruin and shame" on the grounds "that such would better be their end than that they should remain Mormons," the grandson of the Lion<sup>3</sup> roars: "Did ever a more damnable doctrine of hate and immorality remain unpunished? In any community other than one accustomed to meekly bear the spurns put upon them, punishment would have been complete and summary. But the Mormons, being a proscribed party, must walk the exemplary life...."

Continuing his refutation, he states that Brigham Young for years pleaded for an investigation of the Mountain Meadows Massacre, but to no avail. Then in a startling admission, it would seem to many, admits that he does not accept as final the present anti-polygamy legislation and

---

<sup>1</sup>New York Tribune, March 30, 1884. Richard W.'s was printed June 2, 1884 In the same paper. Journal History, June 2, 1884, p 5. Also Deseret News reprint, June 11, 1884.

<sup>2</sup>The Liberal movement was the anti-Mormon party in Utah.

<sup>3</sup>Brigham Young was frequently referred to as the "Lion" of the Lord.

decision of the Supreme Court outlawing polygamy.<sup>1</sup> Since the Supreme Court is not an infallible institution, "we may hope in case of a re-argument [of polygamy] that the question will be considered more in its relations to the rights of others, which must be the basis of conclusions, than its relation to the sentiments of the majority. Majorities, according to Matthew Arnold, are generally wrong...."

In an article written for the Contributor, Richard W. pursues the same thought by saying: "So it is not to the majority but to the 'righteous' remnant (Plato) we must look to for saving power."<sup>2</sup> Then debunking the charge that the Mormons intend to "rise up and wipe away the United States," he concludes: "Whatever designs upon this government others may have, our design is to uphold the Constitution and to assist in the perpetuation of the government."

How on the one hand a person can uphold the Constitution as a divinely inspired instrument of God, and yet on the other can and does declare laws pronounced as "Constitutional" by the Supreme Court in reality "Un-Constitutional," may be a feat of mental gymnastics too difficult for some to follow. But to Richard W. and many of his fellow Church members, the problem is not a great one to fathom. The Constitution is in fact divinely inspired,<sup>3</sup> but that does not mean that the acts of legislators or decisions of the Supreme Court are also. It is apparent that Richard W., along with many of the Mormon people of this period, looked towards a re-hearing of their case, a re-hearing, which if without unjustified malice, would sustain their position.

---

<sup>1</sup>Polygamy declared unconstitutional in Reynold's Case, January 1879. Whitney, Popular History of Utah (Salt Lake City, 1916) 48.

<sup>2</sup>Richard W. Young "Majorities", Contributor, VII (1886) 48.

<sup>3</sup>ibid., 167. Mormon position is based on Doctrine and Covenants, of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints (Salt Lake City, 1957), Section 101, verse 80.

Regardless of what Richard W.'s personal desires may have been, it appears that the army made the next move: his transfer to Fort Hamilton, New York Harbor.<sup>1</sup> Prior to the actual move, however, he bumped into a West Point classmate that had been victimized by a projected assignment to Fort Douglas, Utah. Both Richard W. and his classmate must have been overjoyed at each other's suggestion that they petition the War Department for a swap of assignments. Most assuredly there was further rejoicing when their petitions came back approved.<sup>2</sup>

Yet when the news of his assignment to the army encampment overlooking the city of Salt Lake became known to the Salt Lake Tribune, Richard W. Young became a luminary simultaneous with the following thunderous announcement:

The ordering of Lieutenant Richard W. Young to Fort Douglas to serve as lieutenant on a section of Captain Rawley's battery is simply an outrage, and an outrage so marked that the real facts should be stated in a vigorous protest to the War Department. He has never concealed his full sympathy with the creed of his grandfather; he is a very bitter Mormon; by voice and pen he is doing what he can to further the institution, and to send such a man as an officer to a fort which was established principally to assert the sovereignty of the Republic over this same creed and people, is an oversight so grave that it should at once be corrected. He could not help but be a spy on the camp; there could not be a secret that he would not report (as a matter of duty) to the authority here which he holds a higher allegiance to than he does to the Government of the United States, and while he might be an efficient officer and might perform splendid service anywhere else, it is a wrong to him; a gross wrong to the loyal soldiers of Fort Douglas and to the loyal men of Utah, to give him a command here. We understand that the officers of the garrison are disturbed as they never have been before at the prospect of this officer's coming. What can they do? They cannot receive him as a brother officer should be received; when any affiliations with the citizens may be proposed, it will be impossible for this officer to take a part; the whole atmosphere and tone

---

<sup>1</sup>Whitney, History of Utah, IV, 561.

<sup>2</sup>Idem.



of the Fort will be so offensive to him that his life will be made miserable. He is either a low-spirited scrub, or at the command of his religious chief he has sought a place where he knows he will be mistrusted as a spy, and despised accordingly. The idea of sending a battery to a place as a protection against a disloyal and murderous element of the people and then to send one to hold a command in that battery who is in full and aggressive sympathy with that element, sounds like a burlesque to sane men. We think that the acting governor would be fully justified in officially laying the facts before the president and General Sheridan, and asking that the order be revoked, or that leave of absence be given the lieutenant so that he can remain in this city with his friends. There has not been such a military blunder committed since the order to the Light Brigade to charge at Balaklava.<sup>1</sup>

The big editorial guns of the Salt Lake Herald opened fire on the Tribune with an expected counter barrage. Although not participating at first in the verbal joust, the Deseret News printed the following, credited to the Hatchet, Washington, D. C.

The assignment of Richard W. Young...to duty at Fort Douglas...has filled the faint souls of the anti-Mormons with fright. They say this will encourage the Mormons to believe that the Government is on their side, and that they need fear the army no longer.

....At the War Department it was not known that Lieutenant Young was a Mormon...They only knew him as Lieutenant Young.

What a ridiculous crowd these anti-Mormons must be, to be sure. And what funk they fell into because of a (grand) son of Brigham Young is coming home as a second lieutenant. Bah! They reason like asses and their courage is that of sheep--(Washington, D. C.) Hatchet.<sup>2</sup>

On the 3rd of September, two days after the controversy broke out, the Tribune continued the journalistic duel by beginning their article as follows:

The Herald, as was to be expected, can see nothing out of place in the assignment of Lieutenant Richard W. Young to Fort Douglas. We did not expect that it would. Were the Government to order the 6th Infantry removed and direct that the Nauvoo Legion should

---

<sup>1</sup>Salt Lake Tribune, September 1, 1886.

<sup>2</sup>Deseret News, October 12, 1886.

be called from its retirement and placed in garrison at the Fort, with General Wells as its commander and Lieutenant Young as chief of staff, we have no doubt that the Herald would undertake the cheerful task of proving that movement was in strict conformity with the Constitution and laws....The Tribune has but mildly voiced the sentiments of every officer at Fort Douglas and of every loyal man in Utah....Lieutenant Young is in no sense a citizen of the United States. Though educated at the National Military School...he holds in his soul a command from the first presidency of the Mormon Church as more binding than any possible command of the Government could be. He is in full sympathy with an alien power here, which teaches its subjects to defy the laws.... The assignment was a gross wrong and insult to the soldiers at the camp and to the Americans of the territory.<sup>1</sup>

For about a week the battle raged on, with sporadic upsurges thereafter. Whether General Sheridan was petitioned to cancel the appointment is not known. At any rate, in early October the "Spy" arrived in Salt Lake with his wife and two daughters.<sup>2</sup> But he was not permitted to forget about the religious issues. The following year he applied for admission to the bar of the Supreme Court of Utah. "He presented evidence of his qualifications, a certificate of his admission to the bar of the Supreme Court of the State of New York."<sup>3</sup> In a revolutionary procedural change his application was rejected on the grounds that he had to take an examination. Before it was customary to accept a man if a member of the bar of another state. This change resulted from a conversation between the judges in which they audibly stated the fact that Richard W. was "the relative of the late President Brigham Young, and a Mormon."<sup>4</sup> The thing

---

<sup>1</sup>Salt Lake Tribune, September 3, 1886.

<sup>2</sup>Journal History, October 12, 1886, p. 2.

<sup>3</sup>"A Judicial Outrage," Contributor, VIII (1887), 154.

<sup>4</sup>Idem.

that added injury to insult, as reported by the Deseret News, was that along with Richard W.'s application another was submitted by a man who had no training. "The lawyer [Richard W.] was virtually rejected, the latter was formally accepted." Because of the obvious action of the judges, Richard W. withdrew his application. In commenting on this, an additional incident in the Crusade, the indignation and frustration of the Mormon situation, as they viewed it, is seen in the following words from the Contributor. After pointing out that the Crusaders are determined to deprive the people of Utah of political rights, they continue:

...They evidently regard the Mormon people...fair prey, socially and politically...If they were not restrained they would take possession of our property, real and personal, incarcerate us in prison for our belief, and deprive us of every right of life, and in many instances of life itself....

.....

...We have no reason to expect any...magnanimity for the carpet bag officials sent to this territory by the general government. They are avowed enemies of the Mormon people. They do not propose to give the Mormons justice. They propose to give the Mormons the anti-constitutional, malicious law of spoliation and abuse, which they have succeeded in getting a blind and corrupt Congress to pass. They propose to fight the Mormon people in their own courts, and to prevent those who are accused from having the benefit of counsel, that they may fall an easier prey before them. Truly this is a spectacle for Americans to be proud of! We blush for our country, and pray God that the day may be hastened when such unworthy representatives of it will not be tolerated upon the judicial bench.<sup>1</sup>

There is no information available indicating the type of treatment Richard W. received at the Post. It is suspected that he did not have any major difficulties.<sup>2</sup> In addition to routine duties it is known that he

---

<sup>1</sup>Ibid., VIII, 154-5.

<sup>2</sup>After R. W. arrived in Utah he was queried by a local reporter about his reaction to the Tribune's charge that his assignment was the greatest military blunder since "the charge of the Light Brigade." "He merely enjoyed the same hearty laugh that this brilliant assertion has

acted as the Judge Advocate for Court Martial cases brought before the General Court.<sup>1</sup> While in this position he was commended indirectly by General Crook, Commander of the Department of the Platte, through his Judge Advocate.<sup>2</sup> "...I wish to compliment you on the able manner in which you conducted the case of Captain Olmstead before the Court Martial, and to tell you that General Crook was much pleased with the way you performed your duties as Judge Advocate. He read the entire proceedings himself...and gave me permission to inform you of his opinion in the matter of prosecution."

But the personal desire to get out of the army still persisted in Richard W. Young. Apparently, again he requested permission from the Church authorities to get out of the service. On the 26th of September 1888 the successor to President John Taylor, Wilford Woodruff wrote to Richard W.:

Dear Brother:

At a meeting of the Council of the Apostles held this day the question of the advisability of your retirement from the U. S. Army was introduced, and after some consideration it was unanimously decided that you have the full consent and blessing of the Council in tendering your resignation if you feel to do so. And in either remaining or retiring you have the best wishes and full confidence of myself and all the members of the Council.

Your Brother,

Wilford Woodruff

---

caused everywhere else....and said he supposed General Sheridan knew what he was about when he made the appointment." Unidentified newsclip, Richard W. Young scrapbook.

<sup>1</sup>Special Orders 120, Headquarters, Department of the East, The Platte, Omaha, Nebraska, December 19, 1887.

<sup>2</sup>Lieutenant L. D. Green to Lieutenant Richard W. Young, February 6, 1888. A newsclip in Richard W.'s scrapbook indicated that the trial could last "indefinitely, since some of the prosecution witnesses were snowed in between Salt Lake City and Fort Duchesne." (Unknown source).

Shortly thereafter Richard W. submitted his resignation. He was given a leave of absence until April 12, 1889, the date on which his resignation would become effective.<sup>1</sup>

The army had been a rich and rewarding experience. It provided him with a basic education at West Point and an opportunity to obtain a legal education. In the army he found opportunities for worthy positions and responsibilities which he accepted gladly and the meritorious performance of duties received noteworthy acknowledgement. As a person he had received general acceptance. He had reason to be, and was grateful for his army experience.<sup>2</sup> Now, however, he anxiously awaited an opportunity to launch out into another climate - different socially, religiously and professionally. This future period would provide him his first experience as an adult civilian.

---

<sup>1</sup> Acting Adjutant General to Commanding Officer, Fort Douglas, October 17, 1888.

<sup>2</sup> Girard B. Rosenblatt to Executive Secretary, Alumni Federation, Columbia University, January 2, 1919. Interview with Richard W. Young Jr., May 22, 1959.

CHAPTER IV  
EARLY YEARS AS CIVILIAN (1888-1898)

## CHAPTER IV

### EARLY YEARS AS A CIVILIAN

When one evaluates the historical landscape of this period of Richard W. Young's life, he sees three peaks towering above the myriad events of the surrounding terrain. The first was the issuance of the Manifesto banning polygamy by the president of the Mormon Church, Wilford Woodruff. The second was the gradual rise of political parties, and the last, statehood. First the polygamy Manifesto<sup>1</sup> will be considered.

...After praying to the Lord and feeling inspired, I have issued the following proclamation which is sustained by my counselors and the twelve apostles.

#### OFFICIAL DECLARATION

##### TO WHOM IT MAY CONCERN:

Press dispatches having been sent for political purposes, from Salt Lake City, which have been widely published, to the effect that the Utah Commission, in their report to the Secretary of the Interior, allege that plural marriages are still being solemnized and that forty or more such marriages have been contracted in Utah since last June or during the past year; also that in public discourses the leaders of the Church have taught, encouraged and urged the continuance of the practice of polygamy--

I, therefore, as president of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, do hereby, in the most solemn manner, declare that these charges are false. We are not permitting any person to enter into its practice, and I deny that either forty or any other number of plural marriages have, during that period, been solemnized in our temples or in any other place in the territory.

.....

Inasmuch as laws have been enacted by Congress forbidding plural marriages, which laws have been pronounced constitutional by the court of last resort, I hereby declare my intention to

---

<sup>1</sup>B. H. Roberts, Comprehensive History of the Church (Salt Lake City, 1930), V, 220-221. Issued September 29, 1890

submit to those laws, and to use my influence with the members of the Church over which I preside to have them do likewise.

....And I now publicly declare that my advice to the Latter-day Saints is to refrain from contracting any marriage forbidden by the law of the land.

(Signed) Wilford Woodruff,  
President of the  
Church of Jesus Christ  
of Latter-day Saints

With the death knell sounded on the continuance of new polygamous marriages, the institution of polygamy began to recede. Since it was the ostensible justification for the anti-Mormon Crusade, the way was paved for the permanent establishment and development of national political parties. The Democratic Party, founded in the spring of 1890,<sup>1</sup> preceded the "Manifesto" by approximately five months. The Republican Party took root on the 20th of May the following year.<sup>2</sup> One would look, naturally, to the dissolution of the traditional parties, the Liberal (anti-Mormon), and the People's Party (Mormon). The People's Party disbanded on the 10th of June 1891.<sup>3</sup> The Liberal Party died a slower death, finally fading away in December 18, 1893. Perhaps it asks too much of men to forgive and forget. Such was not possible, despite the demise of the Religious parties. Charges of Church Influence were made in the elections of 1892 and 1895.<sup>4</sup> Numerous refutation of Interference and non-Independence of Church

---

<sup>1</sup>Roberts, op. cit., V, 296.

<sup>2</sup>ibid., V, 298.

<sup>3</sup>idem. Orson F. Whitney, Popular History (Salt Lake City, 1916), 493.

<sup>4</sup>Roberts, op. cit., V 305-09, 330. Infra, 81.



members were made by officials of the Mormon Church.<sup>1</sup>

But regardless of her long history of troubles and difficulties, Utah finally achieved statehood on January 4, 1896. "Utah is now a state in the American Union, and upon an equal footing with the other states of that Union. Henceforth her destiny as a state will be in the hands of her own people."<sup>2</sup> This was a blessing of incalculable value. For now people familiar with local conditions and feelings, Mormon and non-Mormon alike, could rule themselves.<sup>3</sup>

After discharging his first responsibility, relocating his family,<sup>4</sup> and gaining admission to the bar,<sup>5</sup> Richard W. Young propelled himself into a whirlwind of activity and responsibilities. He early established himself with the Sheeks and Rawlins Law Firm.<sup>6</sup> From his resignation until

<sup>1</sup>Roberts, op. cit., V, 302, 334.

<sup>2</sup>Ibid., V, 345. This view was only generally true. The major exceptions were the rejection of B. H. Roberts as Utah's representative in Congress on January 25, 1900, and the proposed rejection of Reed Smoot, U.S. Senator from Utah, 1903-07. (Final vote was taken on February 20, 1907) Whitney, op. cit., 526, 535.

<sup>3</sup>Although the "Mormons" comprised the majority of the population, Charles C. Richards, Territorial Secretary, 1893-96, was the first "Mormon" to hold an important political office from the dismissal of Brigham Young as Territorial Governor in 1858 until 1893. Charles C. Richards, A Brief Sketch of the Democratic Party in the Territory of Utah, 1847-1896 (Salt Lake City, 1943), 1.

<sup>4</sup>Their first civilian home was just north of Richard W.'s birthplace, the Beehive House, on State Street. Salt Lake Herald, October 21, 1888. Journal History of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, October 21, 1888, p 5. Contains daily, miscellaneous records, and newsclips of interest to the Church. Compiled by the Church Historian's office, Salt Lake City. Hereafter called Journal History. Supra, 4

<sup>5</sup> Whitney, History of Utah (Salt Lake City, 1904), IV, 561.

<sup>6</sup>Journal History, October 21, 1888, p 5. Salt Lake Herald, October 21, 1888. Just how long he remained with this firm is not known.

May 1898 he was employed as the attorney for Salt Lake and Los Angeles Railroad Company, the Brigham Young Trust Company, the Co-operative Wagon and Machine Company, and had been one of the original incorporators of the Utah Home Fire Insurance Company and the Heber J. Grant and Company.<sup>1</sup> In addition he was the associate counsel for the Mormon Church.<sup>2</sup> It appears that he concentrated primarily on Corporation Law from 1888 to 1898.

One of his most prominent activities in these early civilian years consisted of association with the Salt Lake Herald. In the latter part of 1888, or early 1899's, he became the director and member of the executive committee of that paper. Afterwards he became chairman of the executive committee.<sup>3</sup> On the 7th of April 1894 he withdrew from active legal practice and became the manager of the Salt Lake Herald.<sup>4</sup> This resulted from "request of persons representing ninety-five percent of the stock of the company."<sup>5</sup> In the position of manager he became directly responsible for the supervision of the editorial and business departments of the paper. Additional significance is added to this appointment when

<sup>1</sup>Whitney, History of Utah, IV, 561. Interview with Clark Young, 22 July 1959. In the Heber J. Grant and Company he served as member and director of the executive committee and later as the vice president of the company. He also was their attorney.

<sup>2</sup>Richard W. Young to Apostle Wilford Woodruff and Brethren of the Twelve, October 2, 1888. In the cited letter Richard W. offers his services to the Church in the following words: "...If circumstances justify it and my services will be of any value in the present legal crusade against the Latter-day Saints, I would solicit employment for such salary as you may judge expedient." (Letter in the Church Historian's files).

<sup>3</sup>Journal History, April 7, 1894, p 7. Deseret News April 7, 1894.

<sup>4</sup>Idem.

<sup>5</sup>Richard W. obtained 48% of the Company's stock. (This represented \$48,000 in investment). Salt Lake Tribune, April 8, 1894.

it is remembered that the Herald was the principal spokesman for the Democratic Party in Utah.<sup>1</sup>

On the 25th of April 1896 Richard W. received an appointment to the State Code Commission.<sup>2</sup> Since the responsibility and time requirements of this appointment were so demanding, Richard W. resigned his position with the Herald.<sup>3</sup> Paying tribute to his work with the paper the Herald also stated:

The two years he has been in control of the business management of this paper, have been years of very general depression, and to newspapers especially trying. Yet under Mr. Young's management the Herald has steadily increased its daily and semi-weekly circulation until today its circulation is very much greater than ever before; and it is with regret that the Herald takes its leave of him as Business Manager.<sup>4</sup>

An observer might logically feel that the Herald would laud their own people. But one cannot forget that the circulation increased during a period of economic depression, which itself is a worthy accomplishment. Perhaps better insight into the appreciation of the Herald staff for their former manager, can be gained from a small entry in the Herald entitled:

#### GAVE HIM A CHAIR

Richard W. Young Can Now Rest in  
Peace---The Details

"As a token of the good will and esteem' he was held in by the members of the Herald Staff, they bought him a "large armchair of the latest improved pattern"--one which would "delight the tired man after a hard day's work,"--and gave it to him at his residence. On arriving

<sup>1</sup>Journal History, April 7, 1894, p 7. Deseret News April 7, 1894.

<sup>2</sup>Secretary of State (State of Utah) to Richard W. Young, April 25, 1896.

<sup>3</sup>Salt Lake Herald, May 1, 1896.

<sup>4</sup>Idem.

home he was met with a delegation of his former associates and the chair. "...The surprise he manifested was of the genuine character which delights the hearts of donors of gifts like this one. With commendable fortitude, however, the recipient recovered and made a few remarks..."<sup>1</sup>

The presentation of the chair to Richard W. is important because it is an early example of the spontaneous response, apparently, of people to his personality and influence. In the absence of more detailed information a person can only speculate on the deeper reasons for this action. Tentatively, it seems reasonable to accept it at face value as a sincere expression of the regard and the respect that his former employees had for him, and their appreciation to him for his recognition of their labors. It remains to be demonstrated, however, how Richard W. influenced people and to what degree.

Of major significance during this decade of civilian life were the various activities of public service that Richard W. engaged in. One of the first of these was a membership on the Salt Lake School Board. In all, he served five years: four years continuously from 1890 to 1894, and then one year, 1897-98.<sup>2</sup> After the first election in which he was a candidate (1890), it was reported that he was defeated by a vote of 301 to 300. Richard W. protested the election on the grounds of fraud, and was later sustained in office.<sup>3</sup> In this formative period smaller districts were combined into larger units, many bond elections held,

---

<sup>1</sup>Unidentified newsclip from R. W. Young scrapbook. Believe from Salt Lake Herald, approximately May 15, 1896.

<sup>2</sup>Whitney, History of Utah, IV, 561-2.

<sup>3</sup>Ibid., IV 562. The election official responsible for the election was indicted for fraud. He was later acquitted, according to Whitney, by a jury made up of "political conferees."

new schools built, issues contested between the school board and the city council. Tax levies, reduction in teacher salaries, teacher resignations were other problems.<sup>1</sup> During the years 1893-94 Richard W. served as vice president of the Board of Education.<sup>2</sup>

Also in the educational area Richard W. was appointed a trustee for the Brigham Young College at Logan, Utah.<sup>3</sup>

Almost simultaneous with his service on the school board occurred an intended four year tour of service on the Salt Lake City Council. He was elected for the first term in February 10, 1890 for two years.<sup>4</sup> Paralleling his experience of his school board election the city government denied his seat. Along with several other members of the Council who were also denied their elected positions Richard W. went into court. He finally received his position on June 17th, 1891, over sixteen months after the election.<sup>5</sup>

During his tenure the news papers recorded many meetings of the Council. Among other things accomplished and discussed were: complaints against taxes, police scandal, miscellaneous city improvements, railroad to Saltair, and the Salt Lake City-County Building.<sup>6</sup> Richard W. served on five of twenty-three standing committees in the City Council. These

<sup>1</sup>Idem. Miscellaneous newspaper reports of the period 1891 through 1894.

<sup>2</sup>Roster of School Board Officers 1893-94, Scrapbook of Richard W. Young.

<sup>3</sup>Journal History, April 13, 1897, p 2. Richard W. held the position from 1897-1898. Improvement Era, 20 (1917), 851.

<sup>4</sup>Whitney, History of Utah, IV, 561. 1890 Election Leaflet, Scrapbook of Richard W. Young.

<sup>5</sup>Journal History, June 13, 1891, p 4, June 15, p 2; June 17, p 2, 4.

<sup>6</sup>Ibid., May 27, 1891, p 4; October 1895, p 5; plus miscellaneous newspapers records from 1890-94.

Included Municipal Laws, Claims, Water Works, Sanitary and Quarantine, and Sewerage.<sup>1</sup>

February 28, 1895 Richard W. Young was appointed by Governor West to the Brigade Command of the Utah National Guard.<sup>2</sup> When it is recalled that the Salt Lake Tribune branded Richard W. Young a "spy,"<sup>3</sup> his promotion from spydom to Brigadier General probably established a modern historical record in intervening ranks traversed in an equivalent time period.

The Tribune commented on the appointment as follows:

The appointment of Richard W. Young to be Brigadier General of the Utah National Guard will, we feel certain, be received by the people of Utah with lively satisfaction. Mr. Young has a thorough military education and training; he is a young man and his experience is up to date. In him the militia will have a live commander, who has had plenty of both theory and practice in military affairs, and who will be able to train the volunteers up to a proper mark, and put upon them the stamp of seasoned troops. It is an admirable selection and we congratulate the Militia on their good fortune, as well as General Young on his promotion; nor do we forget to felicitate Governor West on his good judgement.<sup>4</sup>

Only a few references remain of the activities of the Guard during the year of General Young's command. The following month, he named his personal staff.

On the 13th of March 1895 several companies of the Guard formed before the Herald offices as a tribute to General Young. "General Young

<sup>1</sup>The Municipal Government of Salt Lake City (Salt Lake City, 1891), 7-9. (Pocket size handbook).

<sup>2</sup>Journal History, February 28, 1895, p 3.

<sup>3</sup>Supra, 63

<sup>4</sup>Salt Lake Tribune, February 28, 1895. It is difficult to resist the insertion of this note: "The Tribune doesn't very often do a graceful thing, but when it does it makes a finished job of it; as witness its notice of Mr. Young's appointment to the command of the National Guard of Utah. That was certainly well done for the Tribune and if there is no ulterior object behind the thing, very generous." From unidentified newsclip in R. W. Young scrapbook.

acknowledged the compliment in a brief and modest address. He said he realized that the compliment was to the rank which he held: he was gratified to meet the officers and members of the militia. He would endeavor to discharge the duties of his office faithfully, and asked Colonel Page that his respects be conveyed to the companies through their captains."<sup>1</sup> Eleven days later Richard W. announced his personal staff.<sup>2</sup> The following year the commander did not accept a re-appointment because of the demands of his profession.<sup>3</sup>

There can be no doubt that the selection of Richard W. was a great honor, notwithstanding the fact that it had come from fellow democrat, Governor West. At the time of appointment Richard W. was thirty-six years of age.

General Young's appointment to the State Code Commission on the 25th of April 1896, as previously noted, opened another era of the first civilian decade.<sup>4</sup> The basic responsibility of this commission was to cull the territorial laws, revise and annotate them and other pertinent additions of their own recommendations.<sup>5</sup> The results of their work was to be the new state legal code. The commission made its report on November 1897. The laws were published soon afterwards and became effective January 1st, 1898.<sup>6</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Unidentified newsclip in R. W.'s scrapbook.

<sup>2</sup>Salt Lake Tribune, March 24, 1895; Special Orders 1, March 23, 1895, Headquarters, 1st Brigade, National Guard of Utah. The following were members of his staff: F. W. Jennings, Lt. Col., Asst. Adjt., General; G. H. Penrose, Maj., M.D.; W. A. E. Thornton, Maj., Asst., Inspect. General; C. H. Hart, Capt. Judge Advocate; G. F. Downey, Capt., Aide-de-Camp; J. Meteer, Capt. Aide-de-Camp.

<sup>3</sup>Whitney, History of Utah, IV, 561.

<sup>4</sup>Supra, 74. The Commission was comprised of three men: Richard W. as chairman, Grant H. Smith and William H. Lee, as members. Roberts, op. cit., V, 327, footnote 2.

<sup>5</sup>Whitney, History of Utah, IV, 561. <sup>6</sup>Roberts, op. cit., V, 327.

In commenting on the lasting contribution of the Code Commission's work, Professor Herbert M. Schiller stated that their work was of an excellent nature.<sup>1</sup> The provisions of their work on the penal code remains intact today, and the civil code was only recently amended. By way of contributions, Professor Schiller indicated that the Commission had reduced the number of jurors in felony cases from twelve to eight, and adopted the procedure of information<sup>2</sup> in criminal cases, rather than using a grand jury.

After Statehood Richard W.'s talents were used occasionally as an advisor to Governor Heber M. Wells. Despite the fact that they were in different political camps, it appears that the two former boyhood pals were still very friendly.<sup>3</sup> In a letter to Richard W. on the 18th of March 1897 the Governor writes:

My Dear Dick:

I shall feel obliged to you if you will write briefly your objections to the enclosed bill which you will remember you conceded that I should veto.

It is necessary under the law to file objections with the secretary on all bills disapproved after the session. Please do it tomorrow and I will get it on Saturday as I shall be in Provo until Saturday.<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Interview with Herbert M. Schiller, Professor of Law, University of Utah, 26 July 1959. B. H. Roberts expressed great disappointment with the Commission's handling of the polygamy problem. (Roberts, op. cit., V, 326-27). This will be discussed in reference to the Reed Smoot case, Chapter 6.

<sup>2</sup>"Information" of the District Attorney is a judicial procedure which is the equivalent step of an indictment by a grand jury.

<sup>3</sup>Supra, 14

<sup>4</sup>Governor Heber M. Wells to Richard W. Young, March 18, 1897. (Located in the Utah State Historical Society).



During the time that Richard W. was working on the new code, the Governor wrote him on several occasions asking for information or special actions. For instance, in speaking of the money the Governor believed was being lost to the State through improper assessment procedures of mining operations, he said: "I should like to see the matter remedied in the law either by adopting the suggestion of the Board of Equalization or in some other way which may be known to you."<sup>1</sup>

Richard W.'s last public appointment of the decade came in the position of assistant city attorney. He received this appointment on January 11, 1898.<sup>2</sup>

It seems quite natural that Richard W. should toss his hat into the Democratic arena. The natural repugnance he probably felt for the various Republican regimes since the Civil War and their crusading activities in Utah contrasted with the more subdued attitude of the Democrats towards the Mormons, were important factors. Another was his feeling that the Territory should have home rule, a measure historically opposed by the Republicans, was another important reason for Democratic affiliation.<sup>3</sup>

Richard W. Young's background, personality and interests all point to the likelihood of him playing an important part in the State Constitutional Convention. In fact, for him to have voluntarily passed by such an enticing and creative activity seems improbable. Yet, he was not a member of the Convention; nor has any indication been found that he had been a candidate for a Convention delegate. It seems most probable that

---

<sup>1</sup>Governor Heber M. Wells to Richard W. Young, December 26, 1896. (Located in the Utah State Historical Society).

<sup>2</sup>Salt Lake Herald, January 12, 1898.

<sup>3</sup>Richard W. Young Jr. to L. P. Murray, 5 August 1959.

his new duties as manager of the Salt Lake Herald precluded his participation in this activity.

Nothing prevented Richard W. from the political campaign of 1895. During this offensive Richard W. became a candidate for judge of the Supreme Court of Utah. Despite the defeat of the Democratic cause, and Richard W. Young, the results of the campaign weren't all distressing. B. H. Roberts relates that it was during this time that he made the acquaintance of Richard W.,<sup>1</sup> which friendship remained strong and close throughout the remainder of their lives.<sup>2</sup>

Although Richard W. may not have been in the forefront of the political struggles as a frequent candidate for office, it seems that he was a faithful and strong supporter of the Democratic cause. His name can be found in the activities of the faithful. He was a participant of the Jackson's Day celebration on January 8th, 1892.<sup>3</sup> Charles C. Richards also lists him in his pamphlet history of the Democratic Party history in Utah.<sup>4</sup> This party affiliation was to continue to his death. Possibly because of the accelerated tempo of Richard W.'s activities, he wrote fewer articles for The Contributor in the period from 1888-98 than the previous ten years.<sup>5</sup> Colonel Hamilton Gardner pays Richard W. a nice tribute for his Series of articles on the Nauvoo Legion: "Both from

<sup>1</sup>Improvement Era, 23 (1920), 322

<sup>2</sup>Ibid., 23, (1923) 321-22.

<sup>3</sup>Journal History, January 8, 1892. Deseret News, January 9, 1892.

<sup>4</sup>Charles C. Richards, A Brief History of the Organization and Growth of the Democratic Party in the State of Utah, 1847-1896. (Salt Lake City, 1943), 53.

<sup>5</sup>He finished out the series on the "Nauvoo Legion," wrote the "Mormonite War," and "History of Government of the United States." See bibliography.

a military and historical standpoint, the study was outstanding and still remains the authoritative presentation of the subject."<sup>1</sup>

During the civilian decade under consideration Richard W. was a member of the 13th Quorum of Seventies and also served as a member of the General Board of the Young Men's Mutual Improvement Association.<sup>2</sup>

No clearer perspective of Richard W.'s philosophical views as a whole can be gained than in a commencement address he gave to the graduates of the Brigham Young College on June 10, 1897.<sup>3</sup> The opening sentence establishes his position in relation to his audience and to the world in general: "Friends and Fellow Students, I address you as fellow students for the obvious reason, to paraphrase Shakespeare, that all the world's a school and all men and women, young and old, merely learners." Continuing the same thought, he says: "From the cradle to the grave, and even beyond the grave, we are taught, he is a student, progressing from that state of mental blackness with which he is ushered into the world, by jots and tittles of learning, until he becomes, or may become, in apprehension like God himself."

After observing that we are the recipients of the learning of the world, "the world's fair of intelligence," he poses the question: "Of what advantage after all is education? Its advantages are at least twofold...to make us acquainted with accumulated wisdom of our forefathers and of our

---

<sup>1</sup>Hamilton Gardner, Pioneer Military Leaders of Utah, unpublished manuscript, Utah Historical Society (Salt Lake City), foreward.

<sup>2</sup>The exact years are not known. They are referenced in the Improvement Era, 20 (1917), 851; vol. 23 (1920), 322.

<sup>3</sup>The Tri-Weekly Journal, June 22, 1897. (Logan, Utah). Journal History, June 10, 1897, p 4. All the quotations referring to the commencement speech are from the above cited Tri-Weekly Journal.

contemporaries; to familiarize us with the lessons of the past; and to impress upon us the morning of youth those lessons of application, concentration, and orderly mental processes which constitute the invaluable secret of discipline."

"Learning," says Richard W., "is essential in order that we may cope successfully with the problems of life." Then pointing to what is most important in learning, he suggests that greatest lessons learned by his audience to date is that which remains yet to be learned. From their vantage point of the high foothills, they are now ready for the ascent to the peaks. "No longer is your vision dimmed by the mists of the swamps, your lungs poisoned by the low lying smoke, or your faculties paralyzed by the atrophy of ignorance, but now...all the attributes of your beings are quickened into ambitious desire by the clear atmosphere which opens alluring prospects before you."

Then in a plea to shun the cry that general learning of information, and index proficiency is the most essential part of the educational process, Richard W. asserts, "I desire to take this opportunity of impressing upon you the great importance of knowing things well, accurately. I have learned to place the highest estimate on accuracy in knowledge." Pursuing the same thought, he says: "Be thorough...be accurate to observe the little things. The dollars will look after themselves if we but look after the dimes."

"The temple of knowledge is a structure that must needs rest upon a deep, broad, and solid foundation;...." Then in partial summarization he says:

"...After all, let our careers be what they may be, let mathematics be pursued to its last phase, literature be followed to its farthest roots, science be studied to its latest discovery, and yet the plain and simple acts learned in our earlier days, the ability to read the language, to talk and write it with

accuracy...will continue to be our chief and most useful stock of information. These are the basic elements of knowledge; the abstruse deductions of science and philosophy, and the most advanced developments of culture are the pinnacles and spires of the structure."

"Life is a battle," says Richard W., "man is forever confronted with nature's hardships and the avarice of his fellowmen. ....Success in this life, depends upon you and your efforts and the extent and thoroughness of your information." He then reminds his listeners that "man is a three-sided being": Intellectual, physical, and moral. The "greatest of these is moral strength. With physical strength alone, a man would be a mere brute; with physical and intellectual strength, he would be a mere educated trickster, but with moral strength, even without education or great bodily vigor, he will be a positive factor in his circle of influence...." He recalls for his audience that some of the most influential men were unlettered, including Joseph Smith, Brigham Young, Abraham Lincoln. Even Christ, he says, was "purely and simply a teacher of morals." This, of course, does not discount the value of education, but further stresses the importance of moral development. "Your college," he states, "develops both."

In reference to the conflict between religion and science he says: "Due to the fact that science has claimed more than it could prove, and the fact that priests have been willing to concede less to science than was clearly proven, there has grown up antagonism between the two...." He warns the graduates against the evil of agnosticism by saying: "Should you apply the same rule to the ordinary affairs of life that the agnostic asks you to apply in dealing with God and religion, you would not launch upon a profession, because you could see the end from the beginning only by the eye of faith...." By contrast, he says: "No, the world has not progressed through the supremacy of such views. Men of action, of

courage, of faith, willing to sacrifice for ideals are the men that have succeeded, that have opposed tyrants, freed peoples, penetrated secrets, founded enterprises of great pith and moment, and led the world onward and upward from one plane to another."

Finally, he recommends that graduates follow the way of Christ and advance the cause of what their honored parents have "thus far so nobly advance." By dedication and devotion to such principles "it will yet be said of Utah, the despised, as the poet Bryant said of America:

O fair young mother, on thy brow  
Shall sit a nobler grace than now.  
Deep in the brightness of thy skies.  
The thronging years in glory rise,  
And as they flee  
Drop strength and riches at thy feet.

Thine eye, with every coming hour,  
Shall brighten, and thy form shall tower;  
And when thy sisters, older born,  
Would brand thy name with words of scorn,  
Before thine eyes,  
Upon their lips the taunt shall die."

Such an address one might think is worthy of an audience of any school in the country. It is somewhat startling to discover that there were just twenty-four graduates in the commencement exercises.<sup>1</sup> Perhaps because of this speech Richard W. was appointed the next year as a trustee to the college.

An ominous announcement of the 1st of August 1896 tells of Richard W. having been stricken down by an attack of appendicitis. An early recovery barely averted an operation.<sup>2</sup> This was one of the first of several encounters with appendicitis. Tragically, Richard ignored this organic

---

<sup>1</sup>Journal History, June 10, 1897, p 4.

<sup>2</sup>Journal History, August 1, 1896, p 7.

difficulty as much as possible.<sup>1</sup>

Shortly after the termination of Richard W.'s work with the Code Commission clouds of another sort began gathering. The attitude of public opinion crystalized in the popular phrase: "Remember the Maine." The "Maine" episode initiated actions of lasting importance in the life of Richard W. Young-actions which were to carry fame of Utah and himself throughout the land. To these events, attention is now directed.

---

<sup>1</sup> Interview with Dr. Clark Young, June 3, 1959.

## CHAPTER V

GLORY--SPANISH AMERICAN WAR, ARMY TOUR II (1898-1899)



## CHAPTER V

### GLORY--SPANISH AMERICAN WAR

Welcome, great hearts! Nor tongue, nor pen can tell  
The wealth of love to you this people tenders;  
Ye who went forth the ranks of war to swell--  
Our holy flag's defenders.

Nor trumpet's blare, nor drums, nor cannons' peal,  
Nor dancing flags, nor cheers, nor glad bells ringing,  
Can half proclaim the joy our full hearts feel--  
The songs our souls are singing,

Welcome, great hearts! You come with honors crowned;  
You come to meet a loving State's caressing;  
The people hail you with a pride profound--  
Be your brave souls all blessing! <sup>1</sup>

--Goodwin.

These were tributes big and sincere enough to warm the heart of any Spanish American War Veteran. Their war had been founded on a set of humane principles and objectives which gave its fighters a missionary zeal. First came the infamous actions of Spain against the brave patriots of Cuba. Secondly followed the murderous destruction of the Maine in Havana Harbor. What greater proof did Americans need to villainy? Senator D. O. Rideout reflects the spirit of the times:

"Everything lovely in liberty, everything hallowed in the memory of those by whom it was won," everything sacred in our Declaration of Independence--cried out against the unholy purposes of Spain; and in behalf of Cuba's independence.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>"Welcome My Heroes," Special Program Pamphlet prepared for the return of the Spanish American War Veterans, (Salt Lake City, August 1889), 1.

<sup>2</sup>D. O. Rideout as quoted by A. Prentiss, Editor, The History of The Utah Volunteers (Salt Lake City, 1900), 8.

After the winning of the Philippines from Spain, there arose the great question of what to do with them. Again the missionary spirit carried the Americans along the road of destiny. In the final report of the Schurman Commission it was concluded: "We are there and duty binds us to remain."<sup>1</sup>

The Schurman Commission declared that the Filipinos were unprepared for government, and that no nation actually existed under Aguinaldo. Therefore, the United States Congress should provide them with a government. Congress ought to begin a program of education and leadership development among the local inhabitants as soon as possible.<sup>2</sup>

It is one thing to have a missionary zeal; it is another to have the weapons of war to carry forth your objectives. Secretary of War, Alger, maintained that "it is doubtful if any nation rated as a first rate power ever entered upon a war of offense in a condition of less military preparation than was the United States in 1898...."<sup>3</sup> After having destroyed the Spanish fleet in Manila Harbor on May 1st, 1898, Admiral Dewey was forced to stand guard for two months until ground troops were assembled and were sent to reinforce the naval contingent.<sup>4</sup>

In the interests of securing a peace with honor the combatants waged a short battle for the City of Manila. After the city capitulated on the 13th of August, the insurgents viewed it as their right and privilege

<sup>1</sup>Russel A. Alger, The Spanish American War (New York, 1901), 123. The Schurman Commission was sent to the Philippines in an effort to establish harmony between the Americans and Filipinos. Unfortunately they arrived shortly after the outbreak of the insurrection. They none-the-less carried on a program of investigation and fact collection.

<sup>2</sup>Idem.

<sup>3</sup>Ibid., 455.

<sup>4</sup>William C. Forbes, The Philippine Islands, Boston and New York, 1928, I, 69-70

to avenge themselves against the former masters in any way fitting to their inclinations. But through prior agreement with the Spaniards, the Americans had pledged protection of life and property to their recent foes; consequently, the Americans forbade the entrance of Filipino forces into the city.

The Manila incident along with the apparent intention of the American government to keep the Philippines,<sup>1</sup> were basically responsible for the outbreak of the Insurrection on the 4th of February 1899. A senate resolution of February 14, 1899, stated that America had no intention of incorporating the Philippines. It was their desire rather to establish a suitable government, assist the people to prepare for self government, and lastly at a future time to dispose of the Philippines in a way best for both the Philippines and the United States.<sup>2</sup> Unconvinced that the Americans were sincere, the Filipinos vigorously resisted the Americans in the first half year of the Insurrection. Later their efforts dwindled into sporadic raids. Resistance finally terminated with the capture of Aquinaldo by Colonel Funston, in March 1901.<sup>3</sup>

Utah was no exception to the fervor and excitement that swept the nation with the announcement of the Declaration of War with the Spaniards on April 21, 1898. With his uncle, Willard Young, now a civilian, Richard W. eagerly awaited an opportunity to muster to the colors. But Richard W. had a pressing problem at home. Because of

---

<sup>1</sup>The Peace of Paris, December 10, 1899, awarded the Philippines to the United States.

<sup>2</sup>Forbes, op. cit., 81.

<sup>3</sup>ibid., 104-5. An interesting sequel is that the sons of Aquinaldo and Funston later became West Point classmates.

certain financial reverses, Richard W. was heavily in debt. This fact, combined with the problem of supporting a family of seven children on the more limited salary of an army officer, made the service decision very difficult.<sup>1</sup> In discussing this problem with Apostle Heber J. Grant, Apostle Grant relates that he advised Richard W. to use caution in his decision.<sup>2</sup> Perhaps it was not best for him to go. If not, "It would take ten times as much courage to stay home" as to go. In any case, he suggested that Richard W. discuss the problem with President Woodruff. Richard W. recoiled negatively: "He is one of the most tenderhearted men in the world. He is as tenderhearted as a woman. I feel sure he would not advise me to volunteer." Heber J. Grant retorted: "Do you accept me, Richard, as an apostle of the Lord Jesus Christ, with authority to call people on missions?" Richard W. replied, "I certainly do." "All right, as an apostle I call you on a mission to go to President Wilford Woodruff, and ask him for his advice as to your returning to the army, and your mission is to follow that advice and counsel, no matter how much you dislike to do so. I will stay right here in your office until you return and report." In natural exasperation Richard W. snapped: "Darn you, Heber Grant." He rose and marched over to the Church offices. As he watched his friend re-enter his office the expression on his face told Heber J. what the reply had been. Quoting President Woodruff, Richard W. related: "If you don't go back into the army, Brother Young, after graduating from West Point, you will disgrace the name you bear,

---

<sup>1</sup>At this time Richard W. and his wife had had eight children. One had died in infancy. Interview of Dr. Clark Young with L. P. Murray, August 11th, 1959.

<sup>2</sup>Heber J. Grant, Gospel Standards, edited by G. Homer Durham (Salt Lake City, 1941), 271.

and it will be a reflection upon your dear, dead grandfather, President Brigham Young."

Another somewhat distressing problem to Richard W. resulted from some remarks of his uncle, Apostle Brigham Young Jr. Apostle Young suggested that young men could show their loyalty by staying home and tilling soil, and thereby supporting the men who had been illegitimately called to the front.<sup>1</sup> He further stated that young men should not be swept away by an unrestrained war spirit. On the following morning, Monday, April 25, Richard W. and his Uncle Willard called on the president of the Church, Wilford Woodruff. They explained their disagreement with the sentiments of their relative, Brigham Young Jr. Since both Willard and Richard W. planned to offer their services, the inferences of their relative to themselves and other enlistees, would place them in a unfavorable light. They expressed their opinions further that the statements of Apostle Young Jr. might be interpreted as non-support of the Government by the Church. President Woodruff felt that it would be inappropriate for the Church not to support the Government "in the present crisis," and that the young men of the Church should be ready to serve when called upon. He directed that a special editorial be prepared in which the position of Church support to the Government would be clearly stated. At the end of a second interview with Willard and Richard W. on this subject, he said to them: "Brethren, you have my mind; go ahead and do your duty, and God bless you."<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Journal History of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, April 24, 1893, p 6. Contains daily and miscellaneous records, and news-clips of interest to the Church. Compiled by the Church Historian's Office, Salt Lake City. Hereafter called Journal History. Deseret News April 25, 1898.

<sup>2</sup>Charles R. Mabey, The Utah Batteries (Salt Lake City, 1900), 16-17. The information from this paragraph comes from Mabey, except date that Richard W. was sworn into the service. This date comes from The Muster Roll June 1-30, 1893. Microfilm records, "Richard W. Young" General Services Administration, National Archives, hereafter called "Microfilm."

FIG. 5

CAPTAIN RICHARD W. YOUNG  
Spanish American War  
and  
Philippine Insurrection  
(Later promoted to Major)



Governor Wells issued a "call to arms" on the 25th of April. The next day Richard W., and fellow future officers, Frank A. Grant, George W. Gibbs, Ray C. Naylor and Orrin R. Grow fanned out into different areas of the State and recruited men for the service. On May 3rd a temporary camp was established at Fort Douglas. The day following the officers were selected, and Richard W. at least, was sworn in on the 5th.<sup>1</sup> He received the rank of Captain, as did Frank A. Grant. Richard W. commanded Battery A, and Captain Grant Battery B.

With the administration of the Oath of Allegiance on the 9th of May, and with much drilling under their belt, the crew of men began to take on a semblance of a military organization. Future Governor Mabey records that many men were very unhappy when the news came in that the units would be sent to the Philippines. Having enlisted to fight, they had no desire to waste away in an inactive theater of action.<sup>2</sup>

The Utah troops differed from most of the volunteer units destined for the Philippines in one significant respect. For this they could well thank, perhaps, their late admission to National Guard Status. Shortly after the re-establishment of the Guard in 1894, the units were equipped with some of the latest artillery pieces in the country. Mabey says they had eight 3.2-in B. & L. rifles, (Model 1891) "together with limbers, caisson, and harnesses."<sup>3</sup> It, therefore, gave them a technical capability that would have far reaching consequences against an enemy not equally equipped.

<sup>1</sup>Journal History April 25, 1889, p 2, and April 26, p 2.

<sup>2</sup>Mabey, op. cit., 18.

<sup>3</sup>Ibid., 16. In normal parlance the rifles spoken of here would be called cannons. A limber is the detachable forepart of the gun carriage (when the gun is in the traveling position). It includes the axle, pole, wheels, and caisson.



Shortly before the departure of the battalion from Utah "Elder Richard W. Young called on the First Presidency [of the Church] at their offices and asked for their blessing."<sup>1</sup> President Wilford Woodruff, George Q. Cannon, and Joseph F. Smith then laid their hands on his head. George Q. Cannon, who twenty years previously had appointed Richard W. to West Point, acted as the spokesman for the group, pronounced the blessing.<sup>2</sup>

The day before entrainment for San Francisco Dr. H. J. Faust, as committee chairman, presented Richard W. with "the best specimen of horseflesh that stands on four legs in Utah today...."<sup>3</sup> The little speech which accompanied this presentation demonstrates not only the patriotic sentiments of the donators, but also a high regard for Richard W. personally.

With pleasure I herewith present you the names of some members of the bar of Salt Lake and many of your old friends, who have purchased this horse, saddle and bridle for you to ride on to victory in this great war for freedom. It is but a feeble expression of our esteem for you in educating yourself for our country's good, and being the country's defender in its need. May you, with the brave men from our glorious State, ride on to avenge the "Maine."<sup>4</sup>

Under the command of Captain Young, the batteries marched down the city streets to the train depot. They were "followed by thousands of citizens who gathered to bid them farewell.... Cheer after cheer rang out as the train pulled away...."<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Journal History, May 13, 1898, p 2.

<sup>2</sup>Supra, 21.

<sup>3</sup>Journal History, May 19, 1898, p 5. Deseret News, May 19, 1898.

<sup>4</sup>Idem.

<sup>5</sup>Mabey, op. cit., 19. They left on the 20th of May.

Soon after their arrival in San Francisco Richard W. accelerated an offensive that remains today one of the best examples of two of his important personality traits: persistence and drive. The basic problem which lay at the root of this example consisted of obtaining a battalion organization for the two Utah batteries, and secondly getting the rank of Major for Richard W. Previously on the 28th of April 1898, the Adjutant General of the Army informed Senator J. L. Rawlins of the U. S. Senate that Governor Wells' request for the ranks of Colonel and Major for Willard Young and Richard W. Young was impossible to grant.<sup>1</sup> William A. Lee, using State Attorney General's stationery, wrote a letter on the 5th of May to the Assistant Secretary of War asking for special rank consideration for Richard W. Young, "my very dear personal friend."<sup>2</sup> Mr. Lee commended Richard W.'s moral and physical courage, and reminded the Assistant Secretary of War that with added rank, Richard W. could bring forth the best men of Utah. Since neither a battalion unit, nor the rank of major had been forthcoming on the 29th of May, Richard W. wrote Commanding General, Major General Wesley Merritt the following:

Sir:

I have the honor to state that as senior captain I am in command of two batteries of volunteer light artillery mustered in Utah.

I would respectfully request that these batteries be organized into a battalion and that a major be appointed for the same.

I earnestly solicit your influence for my own appointment to that position.

---

<sup>1</sup>Adjutant General to Honorable J. L. Rawlins, April 28, 1898, Microfilm.

<sup>2</sup>William A. Lee to Assistant Secretary of War, May 5, 1898. This probably did not aid him much. Microfilm.

I am a graduate of West Point, class of '82; served seven years in the 5th arty...' have recently been brigadier-general, commanding Utah National Guard.

Very respectfully,  
Your obedient servant,

Richard W. Young,  
Capt. Utah, U. S. Vol. Arty.

The day following General Merritt received a letter recommending Captain Young for promotion, written by Major D. H. Kingie.<sup>1</sup>

After having been referred to Major General E. S. Otis for evaluation and recommendation, Richard W.'s request was dispatched to the Adjutant General in Washington. General Otis indicated that "the applicant has an excellent record, is well known to the War Department, and he is in every way fitted for the position he seeks...."<sup>2</sup>

Partial victory for the cause came on the 5th of June. General Merritt formed the two batteries into a battalion. In a telegram to the Adjutant General at Washington that date he informed them of his action and his approval of General Otis' recommendation that Richard W. be promoted to Major.<sup>3</sup> Bespeaking genuine efficiency the Adjutant General replied to General Merritt the same day, indicating that Captain Young would be promoted if possible.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Major D. H. Kingie to General Wesley Merritt, May 31, 1898, Microfilm.

<sup>2</sup>Endorsement of General E. S. Otis to Adjutant General of basic letter: Captain Richard W. Young to General Wesley Merritt, June 3, 1898.

<sup>3</sup>Major General Wesley Merritt to Adjutant General, June 3, 1889, Microfilm.

<sup>4</sup>Adjutant General to Major General Merritt, June 3, 1898, Microfilm.

The same date the Deseret News published an article on battalion authorization, the caption of which referred to Major Richard W. Young. In the body of the article, however, they indicated that elevation of the two batteries to a battalion status would "carry with it the advancement of the captain to major...."<sup>1</sup> If this outburst of patriotic fever had reflected the true situation, the War Department, the Governor of Utah, many friends of Richard W. and Richard W. would have been saved many hours of harassment.

The Adjutant General's files record the receipt of a telegram the following day from Governor Wells in which he notes the organization of the Utah Batteries into a battalion.<sup>2</sup> He also asks if he may now appoint a major as head of that organization, and if so, he appoints Richard W. Young. Two days following, May 5th, Colonel Thomas Ward, Assistant Adjutant General at Washington, D. C., received a telegram from Richard W. which essentially duplicated the statements and request of Governor Wells.<sup>3</sup> To this former friend Richard W. adds one additional request, however: that of urging his immediate appointment to the rank of major in the event that the Governor did not have authority to appoint himself to that rank. Indicating a near departure date of the Unit to the Philippines, he requested an immediate answer from Colonel Ward.

Sad tidings were dispatched to Richard W. two days after his telegram to Colonel Ward. This communique from the Adjutant General succinctly stated: "Under the law a field grade officer [major through] colonel] cannot be appointed for battalion of artillery less than three

---

<sup>1</sup>Journal History, June 3, 1898, p 7. Deseret News, June 3, 1898.

<sup>2</sup>Governor Heber M. Wells to Adjutant General, June 4, 1898, Microfilm.

<sup>3</sup>Richard W. Young to Colonel Thomas Ward, Assistant Adjutant General, Washington D. C., June 5, 1898, Microfilm.

batteries."<sup>1</sup> Temporarily peace and quietness was restored, since no further references are made to the problem for several months.<sup>2</sup>

It seems quite evident that Richard W. himself was responsible for the barrage of letters and telegrams that besieged the War Department. The breath and depth of the paper offensive conducted against the Washington officials must have convinced them that the protagonist of this paper offensive could not be easily shunted aside. Had they believed so, they were soon to be disappointed.

In a letter to Major W. A. Simpson, Washington, D.C., dated August 31st, 1898, Richard W. reopened the total offensive. The justification for this action was based on the enlistment of an additional Utah troop unit, Battery C.<sup>3</sup> Because of this the State had in fact provided three batteries, and was therefore authorized the appointment of a major as commander.<sup>4</sup> Richard W. points out that the Governor of Utah has been short-changed in his rights to justifiable appointments. He evidences no sympathy with a new justification for non-promotion by saying: "Now some hitch has occurred and, it comes to me, that the War Department is saying that the army is now top heavy with officers, etc." Besides having filled the position of a battalion commander for some time he frankly states: "Naturally, my dear major, I should like the majority...."

<sup>1</sup>Assistant Adjutant General (Carter) to Captain R. W. Young, June 7, 1898, Microfilm.

<sup>2</sup>Microfilm records indicate no additional references until November 2, 1898.

<sup>3</sup>Battery mustered into the service on July 14, 1898 in answer to the second call for troops from the President of the United States. They were commanded by Captain Frank W. Jennings. After leaving Utah, they went to California and there remained until their discharge on December 21, 1898. Prentiss, op. cit., 59-61.

<sup>4</sup>See Appendix IV for copy of the letter.

In conclusion, he asks the major to enlist the aid of Colonel Ward.<sup>1</sup> Major Simpson filed this letter with the Adjutant General on November 2nd, 1898. Governor Wells followed through with another letter requesting a reopening of the case.<sup>2</sup> Finally on the 9th of November the War Department authorized the promotion of Richard W. Young to major, with a date of commission retroactive to the entry of Battery C into the service, July 14th.

The promotion of Richard W. necessitated corresponding promotions down the chain of command. The War Department again became the object of persecution. Governor Wells requested the promotions of the other officers of the battalion, who were to be promoted as the result of Richard W.'s advancement, have their date of rank backdated to July 14th also.<sup>3</sup> This request was not granted.<sup>4</sup>

In trying to determine just why Richard W. pushed so hard to get the rank of Major, one should consider several factors. The usual complaint to such actions is "glory." Second would be military efficiency. With Captain's Young and Grant in the same organization and with Young designated only as Senior Captain is potentially an unhealthy situation. A third reason is that of Governors' rights and State recognition. Another was the additional money that a major's rank would give Richard W. and his family. It will be remembered that he came into the service heavily in debt.<sup>5</sup> The latter three causes appear to be most valid. There are no

---

<sup>1</sup>Supra, 98.

<sup>2</sup>Governor Heber M. Wells to Secretary of War, November 11, 1898, Microfilm.

<sup>3</sup>Governor Heber M. Wells to Adjutant General, November 23, 1898, Microfilm.

<sup>4</sup>Adjutant General, November 26, 1898, Microfilm.

<sup>5</sup>Supra, 91.

known indications that Richard W. sought the public eye.

Having fought a successful paper war it would be well to back-track to the real conflict. Except for one brief stop at Hawaii the Utah troops were on the high seas from the 15th of June until the 17th of July.

Mabey records a somewhat leisure disembarkment and encampment following their entry into Manila Bay.<sup>1</sup> Writing of their first combat action at Malate Lieutenant Frank T. Hines says: "Here is where the Utah Light Artillery won for the Baby State of America a golden crown--for every raw recruit...fought like an old soldier."<sup>2</sup>

In the traditional "baptism of fire" the Utah men had handled themselves admirably.<sup>3</sup>

After a miserable two week period of trench warfare--one blessed with almost constant rain - the concluding engagement with the Spaniard was fought on August 13th.<sup>4</sup> Then with usual frankness the paraphrased attitude of most of the volunteers was: "The war's over--let's go home!" Utah men were no exception.<sup>5</sup> But after the fall of Manila, the changed attitude of the Filipinos soon became evident to the Americans.<sup>6</sup> Though some of the people at home may have been surprised at the outbreak of hostilities between the Americans and the Filipinos on the 4th of February 1899, it is quite certain that none of the soldiers were.<sup>7</sup> Prentiss quotes

<sup>1</sup>Mabey, op. cit. 20-21

<sup>2</sup>Prentiss, op. cit., 177.

<sup>3</sup>Mabey, op. cit., 23.

<sup>4</sup>Prentiss, op. cit., 192-198

<sup>5</sup>Jointly the officers wrote a letter to Governor Wells asking his assistance in getting the troops home. Ibid., 199-200.

<sup>6</sup>Supra, 89 - 90.

<sup>7</sup>Mabey, op. cit., 38.

Major Young's assessment of the situation as:

It was the general sentiment throughout the entire eighth Army Corps that the Filipino war was justified, being brought on by events that no one could foresee at the time Dewey and Merritt captured Manila. On February 4th a Filipino was killed while trying to pierce the line of the Nebraska regiment.

They are absolutely incapable of self-government, being half-barbarous, and each tribe considers every other one its natural prey. If we should recall our forces they would destroy each other in the race for supremacy, millions of Americans and foreign capital would be lost and hundreds of foreign residents would be massacred. If they set up a government among themselves some other dictator would happen along tomorrow and topple it over.<sup>1</sup>

Then began a series of combat actions that was to engage the Utah Batteries almost until the day of their departure. The men who had bemoaned their assignment to the Philippines on the expectation that they would be pigeon-holed in a vacuum war,<sup>2</sup> ended up fighting fifty-six major encounters, fifty-three of which were against the Filipino Insurgents.<sup>3</sup>

Under the leadership of Major General Arthur MacArthur, the Utah Troops and their military associates of the Second Division of the Eighth Army Corps launched an offensive against the "fiery" Tagalans Filipinos. Their line of advance ran from Manila to Mololos, the Insurgent Capitol, and hence to San Fernando. The total narrative of their exploits and adventures are vividly related in the books of Mabey and Prentiss. A detailed account of those actions, while entertaining and enlightening, is beyond the scope of this paper. Consequently only a few highlights and supplementary background information can be given.

On the whole, operations of the Americans can be divided into major periods: the first was essentially a holding and consolidating

<sup>1</sup>Prentiss, op. cit., 220.

<sup>2</sup>Supra, 94.

<sup>3</sup>Prentiss, op. cit., 409-10



operation lasting from February 4th, 1899 to March 24th; the second an offensive period beginning on the 25th of March.<sup>1</sup> The Utah weaponry included eight 3.2 inch B. L. steel rifles, four 57 mm Maxim-Nordenfeldt guns (1897) which had been captured from the Spanish, and twenty additional assorted weapons, including Hotchkiss revolving cannon, Hotchkiss mountain guns, mortars, and Colts rapid-firs (Brownings) guns.<sup>2</sup> During the period covered by Major Young's first battle report, he indicates the Utah Battalion was the sole artillery support of the Division.<sup>3</sup> In both defensive and offensive engagements one is amazed at the piecemeal use of the weapons. During one operation Mabey reports:

Major Bell of General McArthur's [sic] staff rode up and requested Major Grant to move up beyond the Chinese Hospital, where the Tagalans in a fierce engagement were inflicting heavy damage on the Infantry. Almost at the same moment Colonel Wallace sent word that a company of Tenth Pennsylvanians had been cut off to the left, and Lieutenant Critchlow was sent with one gun up the Leco road to its assistance. The remaining guns tore the woods in front of the advancing Infantry...."<sup>4</sup>

On a man to man basis, Infantry, the Tagalans gave the Americans a difficult time. The reports seem to indicate that on many occasions the Americans were badly outnumbered. But the equalizing force, and in many engagements the deciding factor, rested in the technological superiority of the American artillery.

Because of their highly skillful and courageous use of these superior weapons the Utah troops became highly revered among their

<sup>1</sup>Mabey, op. cit., 36-53, 53-74.

<sup>2</sup>Battle Report A, Appendix V. Major Young lists only the 3.2 inch rifles and the Maxim Nordenfeldts in his Battle Report A. Mabey lists the other weapons. Mabey, op. cit., 47.

<sup>3</sup>See Appendix V

<sup>4</sup>Mabey, op. cit., 44.

warrior comrades. The following is a good example of the convincing qualities of the artillery pieces:

The maddened Filipinos made a renewed attempt to cross the bridge and penetrate the Nebraska line, that they might gain their coveted goal--the city of their dreams, [Manila]. The aim of the two guns was concentrated upon this point. Twice the Tagalans with frenzied courage charged up the bridge, only to be torn to pieces by the shrieking shells and the deadly bullets. With desperate energy they hauled an artillery piece into position on the bridge, but this was demolished by a single shell from one of our guns.<sup>1</sup>

While on the offensive the guns usually followed the Infantry. The Infantry frequently were stopped by successive defensive positions built by the Filipinos. On such occasions an urgent call for artillery support brought forth one or two guns to a line immediately behind, sometimes abreast, and more surprisingly, sometimes even ahead of the Infantry. The rapid deployment into action precluded in most cases the preparation of protective earth works. Further, in reading the battle accounts, a person is at first startled at the frequent close range employment of the artillery support.<sup>2</sup> Often engaging the enemy at ranges 200 yards or less and working in the open where small arms fire is especially effective, the Utah men not only effectively supported their comrades, but also won their hearts and admiration. In his battle report of April 5th, 1899, Major Young summarizes their operations by saying:

I am able to state, as in preceding reports, that it has been the almost invariable rule that the artillery has been advanced to and frequently beyond the infantry skirmish lines, and has been used at ranges (notably at the Tullahan and Marilao rivers) usually deemed impractically close for artillery. In no instance during the advance to Malolos, save at the railway crossing near Malolos, was the artillery screened by sandbags or field works.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Ibid., 40.

<sup>2</sup>Mabey records their use at 150, 100, 200 and at 100 yards.  
Ibid., 45, 57, 68, 69.

<sup>3</sup>Battle Report B, Appendix V

The Sunshine patriots and glory seekers seldom find war the realization of their dreams. To a friend at home Richard W. writes on the 14th of May 1899:

I have not slept without my trousers, shirts and stockings on more than once since the fracas started. Our days have been tollsome and nights much disturbed. Personally, I have been in twenty-five engagements, besides being under fire numerous other times when we were not replying. ....We have had eleven men die, eight killed and three of natural deaths, and have had seventeen or eighteen wounded....Our boys have taken our guns, all exposed, up to within even sixty yards of entrenched "niggers,"....<sup>1</sup>

Guns and guts alone are not the answer to successful operations. Leadership ought and must be considered.<sup>2</sup> Reading the reports of Major Young, one is highly impressed with the frequent commendation of his subordinate officers and men. Here are some of his references:

I desire to record my judgement that the services of Lts. Critchlow and Fleming and of Ensign Davis, who were under my personal observation, have been marked by professional skill, judgement, and personal bravery of the highest order.<sup>3</sup>

I am satisfied that no troops during this advance have performed more dangerous service than these detachments under Lt. Seaman in their perilous progress up the Caloocan road; too much, therefore, in my judgement cannot be said in praise of their intrepidity and efficiency.<sup>4</sup>

In reporting his own specific actions during the month of March, Richard W. states:

During the month my personal headquarters were at Caloocan, but frequently visited other detachments along the lines. I was in charge of the artillery on the expedition to Malolos, and personally selected the site and superintended the firing in every instance in which any part of the artillery went into action.

<sup>1</sup>Prentiss, op. cit., 373..

<sup>2</sup>See report of Lt. Maylor's exploits for excellent combination of the three qualities. Mabey, op. cit., 54.

<sup>3</sup>Battle Report A. Appendix V

<sup>4</sup>Battle Report B. Appendix V

In order to better illustrate his combat actions, two specific battle reports have been included in the appendices.<sup>1</sup> It should be noted that in the situation at Tullahan and Marilao rivers, Richard W. personally reconnoitered the situations, and chose the gun positions, and generally supervised their emplacement and firing.

Since the reports of the engagements at Tullahan and Marilao rivers were both written by Richard W., it could be felt he might color them to his own advantage. Let the reader judge for himself of the importance and flavor Richard W. attaches to his own operations from the action described below. Soon after the insurrection broke out, Major Young was directing his men in an advance towards enemy lines. Below is Major Young's report:

"Just previous to the advance toward the pumping station Q. M. Sergt. Harry A. Young Doctor ...who was under appointment to meet me at Deposito, advanced under some misapprehension into the insurgent lines and was killed, his remains being found about 1½ miles from the Deposito, near the road.<sup>2</sup>

After describing the gory condition of Dr. Young's body, and after noting that Major Young was the first to find his body, Mabey says: "A few minutes later, while the body was being conveyed to Manila, the major calmly commanded his men in a rush with the enemy, in which eighty of them were killed. This exhibition of splendid courage was ever after an inspiration to the Utahn when he felt like being disheartened."<sup>3</sup>

In the February 15th Battle Report just cited Richard W. states: "Shrapnel fire proved to be very efficacious at a range of 2,000 yards

<sup>1</sup>Battle Reports C, D, Appendix V

<sup>2</sup>Battle Report A, Appendix V

<sup>3</sup>Mabey, op. cit., 42.

In driving back a party [of Insurgents] which advanced fearlessly from the right to attack a flanking party under command of Major Bell, U. S. Volunteer Engineers."<sup>1</sup>

Says Mabey of the same situation:

Major Bell with a flanking column of Montanas deployed through a ravine on the right. Suddenly a long ropelike column of natives whipped out of the fringe of the woods and quickly coiled around the company. Major Young saw the predicament in which the Americans were placed, and soon the murderous shells fell in the midst of the column, which broke into fragments and disappeared the way it had come. The next day Major Bell was lavish in his praise of the batteries, and several British officers who were watching the progress of the fight complimented the gunners on their expert and effective gunnery.<sup>2</sup>

In both instances his own contribution was omitted. His battle reports subordinate his own actions and frequently commend his subordinates.

Only one of the letters extant in the Utah Historical Society from Major Young to Governor Wells during the war period pertains to himself.<sup>3</sup> He requests the Governor to release to the local newspapers correction to overstated accounts which had indicated extraordinary heroism of Major Young and Battery A. These reports placed Major Grant and Battery A in a less spectacular light. This publicly disclamation of any undue recognition to himself is a fundamental mark of good leadership. The other letters in the Historical Society of Richard W. to Governor Wells are concerned with the basic welfare of the men. They solicit the Governor's aid in promotions, early discharges, aid in transportation home from San Francisco to Utah, etc.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Battle Report A. Appendix V

<sup>2</sup>Mabey, op. cit., 65.

<sup>3</sup>Richard W. Young to Governor Wells, December 31, 1898, Appendix VI, Utah Historical Society.

<sup>4</sup>Correspondence of Major Richard W. Young to Governor Heber M. Wells, 1898-1899, Utah Historical Society. Numerous biographical summaries of

Unlike the post-World War II situation the Army of the Philippines could not turn over civil duties in occupied territory to American Military Government personnel. For this reason General Otis searched his command for personnel with civilian training who could operate the civil government.<sup>1</sup> Major Young was among those selected to assist in the legal functions. He served from November 16, 1898 until the outbreak of the Insurrection as Judge of the Superior Provoct Court.<sup>2</sup> General MacArthur requested his services as the officer in charge of Bureau of Complaints.<sup>3</sup> Lastly because of his appointment to the Supreme Court of the Philippines in May 1899, Richard W. was relieved from combat duty;<sup>4</sup> and Major Grant took command of the battalion.

On the memorable day of June 24th the Utah Battalion left the battle zone for Manila. A week later they embarked for the voyage home. Prior to their departure Major Young appeared at the dock to pick up a launch that would carry he and a Colonel Pope out into the bay where the Utah troopship lay anchored. Although the launch reservation had been made

---

General Young credit him with winning the Congressional Medal of Honor during the Insurrection. Although several government agencies were queried, no confirmation of the medal of honor award has been received. At the present time this problem remains unsolved. Reference: Letter to Louis P. Murray from Librarian United States Military Academy June 22, 1959; Army Command and Staff College, June 24, 1959; National Archives and Records Service July 13, 1959; Army Records Center July 15, 1959.

<sup>1</sup> Forbes, op. cit., 114

<sup>2</sup> Annual Reports of the War Department for the Fiscal Year ending June 30, 1899 (Washington, D. C. 1900) II, 184. Hereafter called Army Reports.

<sup>3</sup> General Arthur MacArthur to Adjutant General, August 22, 1898, Microfilm.

<sup>4</sup> Army Reports, II, 146. On February 17, 1899, Major Grant was reassigned to the command of a small flotilla of armed river boats. With some of the Utah men his tin clad fleet became famous. He gained the title of the "Dewey of the Army." Prentiss, op. cit., 378. Mabey, op. cit., 77 ff.

a week previously, it was then in use. By the time Richard W. could get a substitute, the Utah troopship had started for the open sea. Major Young was unable to catch the ship.<sup>1</sup>

Richard W. mustered out in the Philippines on the 28th of June 1899. This action made possible the promotion of Frank A. Grant from Brevet to regular major on the following day.<sup>2</sup> After procuring permission to leave the islands to return home for his family, Richard W. arrived in San Francisco the same day as the Utah men were discharged from the service at the Persidio.<sup>3</sup> He returned with them to Utah for a triumphant welcome by proud and grateful home folks.

If their leave taking was a memorable one, what shall be said of the stupendous, soul-stirring, lung splitting hearth-throbbing welcome which they were accorded as they again set foot in their native city today?

It was a perfect delirium of greeting, a frenzy of popular enthusiasm; the town turned itself topsy-turvy with delight over its heroes and probably while life lasts they will not forget the whole-souled nature of that welcome home.<sup>4</sup>

Since the Governor had declared an official holiday, state citizenry collected in great numbers to see their fighting men bravely parade through the Salt Lake streets.<sup>5</sup> Majors Grant and Young rode side by side in front of their battalion. Repeatedly joyful relatives and friends broke into the formation until it became difficult, if not impossible, to call the battalion a military organization.

<sup>1</sup>Salt Lake Herald, August 23, 1899.

<sup>2</sup>Orson F. Whitney, History of Utah (Salt Lake City, 1904), IV, 563.

<sup>3</sup>The battalion went home by way of Japan.

<sup>4</sup>Deseret News as quoted by Prentiss, op. cit., 361.

<sup>5</sup>ibid., 359. Many military and civilian organizations participated in the parade, including eleven bands. Ibid., 361-65.

Having arrived at Liberty Park, the veterans were the honored guests of the populace. First, of course, were a series of speeches by local dignitaries and remarks from Majors Grant and Young. Then during an impressive dinner "fair maidens...pinned badges on the breasts of the modest volunteers."<sup>1</sup>

The recollection of joyful and harmonious atmosphere and the festivities exploded with the following announcement of the Salt Lake Tribune:<sup>2</sup>

Friends of Major Richard W. Young have been pained to learn, since the return home of the volunteers, that Major Young is exceedingly unpopular with a majority of the boys, who made such a glorious name for themselves in the Philippines.

But any attempt to disguise the fact of Major Young's extreme unpopularity, with the members of his former command, as well as with various members of battery B, would be useless.

.....

The chief complaint against Major Young is that he acted in a manner prejudicial to the batteries, in order that he might curry favor with General Otis.

One of the battery men expressed himself as follows upon the subject yesterday: "The fact is that Major Young played into the hands of General Otis in order to get something good for himself. And he got it, too. We would have been mustered out a long time ago, had it not been for Young, who seemed determined to keep us there until he got what he was after.

When the boys sailed from Manila, Major Young did not say good-bye to them, but instead sent a letter to them to be read to them in mid-ocean. When...presented it is said that [it] was received with hisses and groans.

It is also said that when Major Young visited the batteries at the Presidio in San Francisco and delivered an address, many of the boys walked away as soon as he began to speak, while others remained and evidenced their displeasure in a more demonstrative way.

---

<sup>1</sup> Mabey, op. cit., 71.

<sup>2</sup> Salt Lake Tribune, August 22, 1899.



The reaction caused by this verbal blockbuster rocked the news and editorial staffs of local newspapers for several days. Charges of religious attacks were stated or intimated. It became the justification for ferreting out the opinions of ex-battalion men from one end of the State to the other. Even military units passing through Ogden on their way East were questioned about Major Young. The Governor of the State assailed the Tribune: "Were Major Young a candidate for office they might be excused, for politics is supposed to give warrant for more bitter attacks than facts justify. However, with no campaign on these attacks seem to me to be wolfish."<sup>1</sup> Joining with many others he decried the charges of Major Young attempted to keep the Utah Batteries in the Philippines for his own selfish interests. Major Grant says that he was with General Otis and Richard W. when the problem of rotating the battalion back to the United States was discussed. "I must say," reported Major Grant, "if ever a man pleaded for the return of the batteries, Major Young did, so much so that when the interview terminated I told Young that if anything, he had said too much."<sup>2</sup>

Men of the Tenth Pennsylvania Regiment were shocked at the machinations of local politics. Said Major Neff:

It's a burning shame. My judgement is that Young was a grand man, a superb fighter and every inch a gentleman. There was not a finer artillery officer on the Island than he. I know that he worked incessantly for the welfare of his men and the efficiency of the service. ....You will not find in all our regiment an officer who has aught but the highest praise for Major Young.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Salt Lake Herald, August 24, 1899.

<sup>2</sup>Deseret News, August 22, 1899.

<sup>3</sup>Salt Lake Herald, August 24, 1899.

Although once again in disgrace with the Tribune<sup>1</sup> it would appear that if anything Richard W. emerged from the conflict with higher esteem than before. His public participation in the struggle began and ended essentially in these words: "I have no defense to make further than I have done my full duty by the battalion, as I saw it, and shall, of course, have to abide by the consequence."<sup>2</sup>

But not all of those queered upheld Major Young as the ideal officer. One of the dissenters concluded his evaluation by saying:

Young is unpopular. One reason is that he was extremely partial. Another is he used the battery boys as a lever to lift himself to power and then deserted them. Grant is not much either; in fact, the only men in the outfit are Gibbs and Naylor. Webb! Ah! he's a shyster! He was a tyrant; he'd dog the boys around and insult them.

You'll find that very few of the boys have any use for "Our Dick" as you call him. He slung me in the guard house."<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Supra.

<sup>2</sup>Salt Lake Herald, August 24, 1899.

<sup>3</sup>Idem. In the various opinion polls taken of the battalion veterans, Richard W. was occasionally criticized by a few for his lack of regard for the welfare of his men. In addition to others already mentioned the complaints centered primarily around the lack of rations. (What army has not so complained?) But as a battle commander, almost all praised him.

CHAPTER VI  
THE LONG TOUR OF CIVILIAN LIFE (1899-1917)

## CHAPTER VI

### THE LONG TOUR OF CIVILIAN LIFE (1899-1917)

During the short period after his return from the Philippines, Richard W. Young and family busily prepared for the return trip to the Islands. Shortly before their departure, Richard visited the new President of the L. D. S. Church, Lorenzo Snow.<sup>1</sup> While there, with the assistance of some of the other Apostles, President Snow blessed his visitor.<sup>2</sup> Quite likely this had been the purpose of the visit.

Along with several of the older children and his wife, Richard W. returned to the Philippines in the early fall of 1899.<sup>3</sup> Soon after their arrival he purchased a Spanish cannon, weighing 800 pounds and shipped it home to the State as a gift.<sup>4</sup> Besides asking his boyhood friend, Governor Wells, to monitor its transportation from San Francisco, he says: "I want you to have it engraved...." The requested plaque was to read:

---

<sup>1</sup>Willford Woodruff, the previous president, died September 2, 1898.

<sup>2</sup>Journal History of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, October 18, 1899, p 4 . Contains records and newsclips of interest to the Church. Compiled by the Church Historian's Office, Salt Lake City. Hereafter called Journal History.

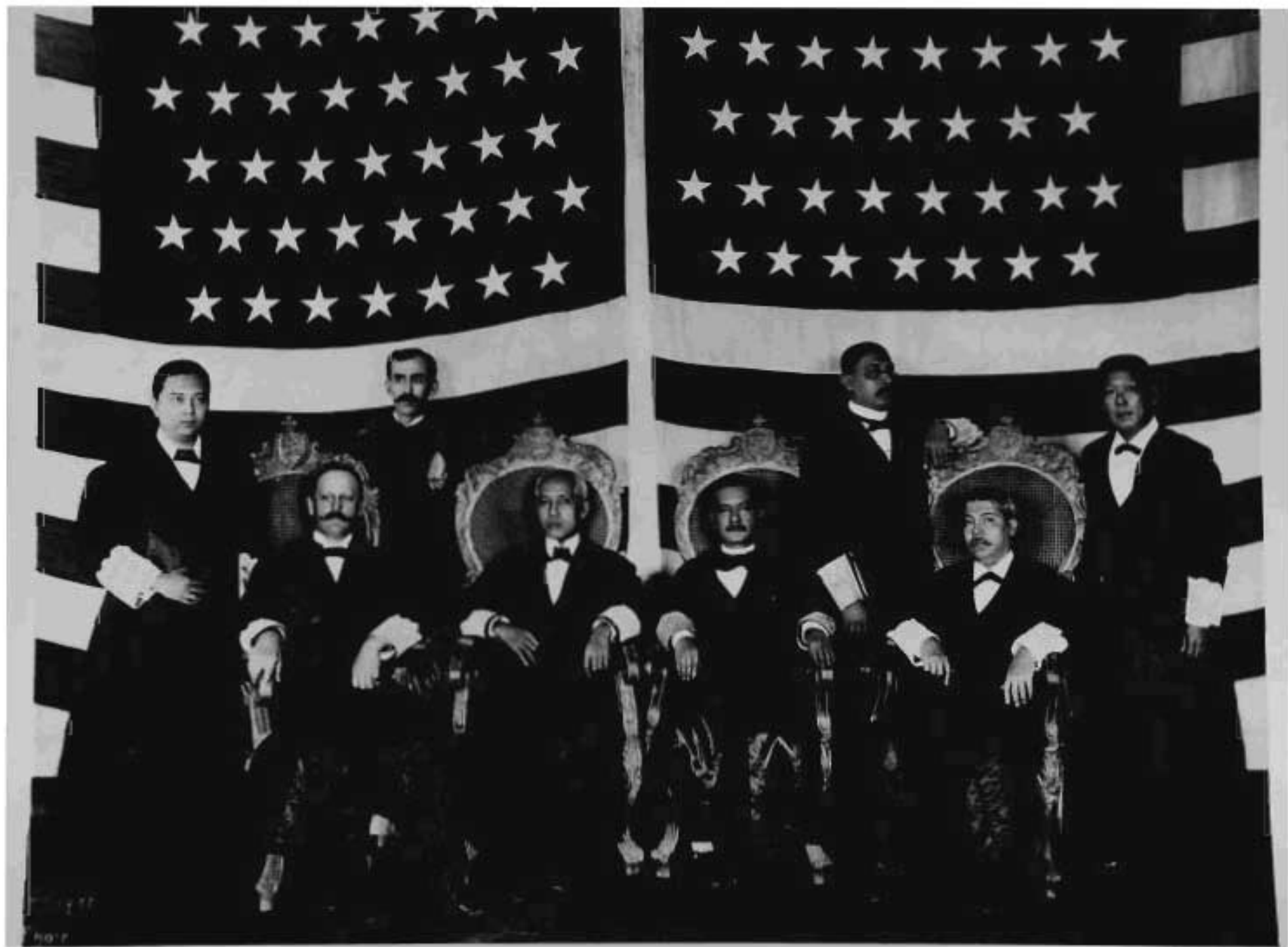
<sup>3</sup>The remaining children remained home under the supervision of a nurse and housekeeper. Interview with Mary Young Burton, August 15, 1959.

<sup>4</sup>Richard W. Young to Governor Heber M. Wells, January 23, 1900. Utah Historical Society.

FIG. 6

SUPREME COURT of the PHILIPPINE ISLANDS  
1900

Standing:	Don Gregario Arenta  Magistrate	Lieutenant Colonel E. H. Crowder  Magistrate	Don Julio Llorente  Magistrate	Don Dionisio Chanco  Magistrate
Sitting:	Hon. Richard W. Young  President of the Criminal Branch	Don Florentino Torres  Attorney General	Don Cayetano S. Arellano  President of the Supreme Court	Don Manuel Araullo  President of the Civil Branch



CAPTURED  
AT  
MANILA, AUGUST 13, 1898  
PRESENTED  
TO THE  
STATE OF UTAH  
BY  
MAJOR RICHARD W. YOUNG  
UTAH VOLUNTEER LIGHT ARTILLERY

During Richard's tour on the Bench of the Philippine Supreme Court, and President of the Criminal Division of that Court, he associated with some of the finest lawyers in the Islands. Speaking of the Chief Justice of the Supreme Court, Arellano, an Army Report says: He is "a native of the Island, a profound lawyer, and probably the best-posted man living, whether Filipino or Spaniard, in Spanish political colonial-history--at least insofar as the Philippines are concerned."<sup>1</sup>

Unquestionably the major written contribution of Justice Young consisted in his authorship of General Order 58. This General Order basically gave the Filipinos for the first time in their history the basic rights and procedures of an Anglo-Saxon Criminal Law. Chief Justice Arellano says: "It is the greatest benefit conferred on the Inhabitant of this country....This law, based upon the accusatory system, has abolished the inquisitorial process so derogatory to the rights of the accused, and which was the foundation of our former criminal procedure."<sup>2</sup>

Six years after General Order 58 became effective, the American Lawyer credited its authorship to both Major Young and Colonel E. H.

---

<sup>1</sup>Report of War Department for 1900, I, 449, as quoted by William C. Forbes, the Philippine Islands (Boston 1928), I

<sup>2</sup>Eugene A. Gilmore, "Philippine Jurisprudence", American Bar Association Journal, (February 1930), 93.

Crowder....It has been translated into Spanish, and every lawyer in the Archipelago...is familiar with it."<sup>1</sup>

After having seen other assertions of authorship of General Order 58, the noted General E. S. Otis<sup>2</sup> wrote Richard the following:

Rochester N.Y., Dec. 17th.  
1906

My Dear Major:

I saw that the Review of Reviews credited Secretary Root with the authorship of our G. O. 58 of April 1900, but had not noticed that the American Lawyer made it into the everlasting monument to attest the legal genius of Colonel Crowder. I have seen also other articles and expressions of opinions attributing other portions of our work to persons in no wise concerned. I have about concluded that I was never in the Philippines.

I know this, however,--that you worked out a Philippine Criminal Code, taking as a basis the code of California, and that Crowder had very little, if anything, to do with it.... I made but few suggestions and changed the final draft of the order very slightly....As you have the original copy or draft it might be well to let the astute lawyers of the country know who did the work and hold over them the draft as conclusive evidence of your claim.<sup>3</sup>

Major R. W. Young  
Counselor at Law

Sincerely yours,  
E. S. Otis

Richard W. wrote the Philippine Judge of the Court of First Instance, the Honorable Charles Sumner Lobingier, and explained his claim of authorship of General Order 58. In a footnote to his article "A Decade of Juridicial Fusion in the Philippines" in Case and Comment he

---

<sup>1</sup>James H. Blount, "Some Legal Aspects of the Philippines," The American Lawyer, (November 1, 1906), 495.

<sup>2</sup>General Otis appointed Richard W. to the Supreme Court. He controlled military and civil administration until relieved of the latter by the Taft Commission.

<sup>3</sup>The original copy exists in the collection of personal papers of Richard W. Young.



refers to Richard W. Young's letter to him.<sup>1</sup> After citing another claim to its authorship, he states: "It is fair to say, however, that the opinion of those who were in the Philippines when the instrument first appeared substantiates Colonel Young's claim...." It is not known whether Richard wrote additional letters asserting his authorship.

The members of Richard's family who had accompanied him to the Philippines returned home the next year.<sup>2</sup> After resigning from his office in 1901, he arrived home in June.

In assessing his contribution few people would doubt that his appointment had been an honor and important responsibility. The Schurman Commission had cautioned that the personnel selected for administrative duties in the Philippines should be "men of the highest character and fitness, and partisan politics should be entirely separated from the Government of the Philippines."<sup>3</sup>

When one recalls that the Democratic Party bitterly denounced the Imperialistic actions of their Republican counterparts during and after the Spanish American War,<sup>4</sup> it seems anomalous in the extreme that confirmed democrat Richard W. Young should have carried the Republican banner as high or higher than any other man in the State.<sup>5</sup> As a further contribution, Heber J. Grant credits Richard with the

<sup>1</sup>Charles Sumner Lobingier, "A Decade of Juridical Fusion in the Philippines," Case and Comment, 17 (1910), 215.

<sup>2</sup>Interview with Mary Young Burton August 15, 1959.

<sup>3</sup>Forbes, op. cit., 123

<sup>4</sup>Arthur S. Link, American Epoch (New York, 1956), 16.

<sup>5</sup>Perhaps this is the definition of true bi-partisanship. There is no doubt Richard W. Young felt his war and legal duties superceded his party loyalties.

winning of love and confidence of future President William Howard Taft who "ever afterwards was a friend not only of Richard W. Young, but of the Mormon people."<sup>1</sup>

When it is recalled that Richard's chief domestic worry at the outbreak of the war was his indebtedness,<sup>2</sup> his present financial solvency must have been a great comfort. Certain previously accumulated stocks had paid handsome dividends during his absence. This change of the financial tide liquidated all of his debts and gave him "enough money for a new home and other valuable property."<sup>3</sup>

Another award and recognition of Richard W. Young speaks with a greater clarity and emphasis than words themselves. On the 17th of February 1902 the War Department informed him that the President had appointed him as a member of the Board of Visitors to West Point.<sup>4</sup> To be a member of the Board of Visitors in any year is a high recognition. To be selected a member of that Board in its centennial year is a distinct honor. While at West Point with her husband Mrs. Young was introduced to President Roosevelt. She relates that the President took her aside and told her of his great admiration for her husband, and the work that he had done in the Philippines.<sup>5</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Heber J. Grant, Gospel Standards, edited by G. Homer Durham (Salt Lake City, 1941), 273.

<sup>2</sup>Supra, 90-91

<sup>3</sup>Grant, op. cit.,

<sup>4</sup>Adjutant General to Richard W. Young, February 18, 1902. Scrapbook of Richard W. Young. The basic mission of the Board of Visitors is to examine all the phases of the Cadet training program and recommend changes as seen fit. A new Board inspects annually.

<sup>5</sup>Jacqueline Young, "The Most Unforgettable Character I've ever Met," Unpublished Essay, Personal Collection of Richard W. Young, (October 12, 1952), 2.

In seeking the appointment to the Board of Visitors, Richard W. enlisted the aid of General Otis, who wrote:

For his exceptional war service in the Philippines; for his labors there as a judicial officer; for the aid he furnished me in establishing a code of practice and in preparing orders amendatory of Spanish Law and legal customs, I could recommend Major Young for almost anything, and I unqualifiedly recommend him for the appointment he herein requests.<sup>1</sup>

That Richard W. should have applied for this appointment does not downgrade the dignity or honor of his appointment. It seems highly improbable that without a meritorious record that this democrat would have been appointed by the republican President.

Once back in his old Law practice Richard W. continued on in the same pattern, it appears. In addition to those companies previously mentioned with whom he was associated,<sup>2</sup> he assisted in the founding of the Beneficial Life Insurance Company, became a member of the Executive Committee, and remained the Company's attorney until his death. In 1902 he was employed as the attorney for the Bear River Water Company. This company combined interests with the Utah Sugar Company. Finally the consolidating companies later merged with the Idaho and Blackfoot Sugar Company, becoming the Utah Idaho Sugar Company. Throughout all of this activity Richard W. provided the legal counsel. Until his death he was employed by the Utah Idaho Sugar Company as their attorney. In addition to becoming the attorney for the Austin Brothers Livestock Company, he eventually held large quantities of stock in the company.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Extracts of letter from E. S. Otis to Adjutant General, November 5, 1901 as quoted in letter from General E. W. Otis to Richard W. Young, November 5, 1901.

<sup>2</sup>Supra, 73.

<sup>3</sup>From private research of Dr. Clark Young. Dr. Clark Young to Louis P. Murray, 29 July 1959.

From 1902-1917 the first known partnership of Richard W. with other lawyers resulted in the firm of Young, Snow, and Ashton. His partners were Ashby Snow and E. Conway Ashton. Later with his son, Richard W. Jr., he formed the firm of R. W. Young and Son. It was from this last combination that some of the best information of the professional life of Richard W. Young has been made available.

The professional association of Young and Son began shortly after Richard W. Jr., graduated from Columbia Law School in 1914. At this time he wrote his father and asked his advice on the acceptance of a very promising position with one of the leading law firms in New York City. In the return letter his father carefully analyzed the potentialities of various locations. He added that it had long been his ambition for he and his son to establish a joint firm. Although promising that equivalent salaries would never be possible at home, he felt that the association with family and his own people were worthy compensations. As a last note he emphasized that the final decision must be made by his son.<sup>1</sup>

Thirty-one years after that decision, Richard W. Jr., reflected that the law classmate who accepted the position first offered him currently received an annual salary of \$50,000.00. Quite naturally Richard W. Jr., would evaluate their relative positions. As predicted by his father his salary amounted to much less. Yet in a significant statement he says: "As I look back over those years spent with him I find no scintilla of regret over my decision."<sup>2</sup> Richard Jr. explains

<sup>1</sup>Richard W. Young Jr., to Minerva Young and family, April 11, 1945.

<sup>2</sup>He was associated with his father-in-law from 1914 until December 1919.

that his father acted as an advisor and confidant. Their discussions covered the spectrum of life. In his professional ethics Richard Jr. says of him:

No man ever lived who had a higher and more discriminating sense of honor, fairness and equity. He was the soul of honor. And this he brought to be, consciously or unconsciously, upon every legal question which arose in the office. He was always, indefatigable, after the ultimate truth in the facts and circumstances surround every case which he handled. He refused uncompromisingly to deviate from this rule or to slight or pass over lightly any matters which came to his attention even though they might be detrimental to the winning of his case. There was no taint or suggestion...of the legal opportunist in his makeup. He abhorred all such, like he abhorred sin.<sup>1</sup>

Richard W. Jr. also recalled that on occasions persons would approach his father and request him to "turn a sharp corner or two or withhold certain information which might militate against their interests."<sup>2</sup> He refused to participate in any such activities and as a consequence lost some business from older customers and potential clients.

The influence his father's standards had on him Richard Jr. describes in this manner: "It isn't difficult...to imagine the effect of such an idealistic attitude respecting the practice of law upon a young novice at the bar such as I. It has been a continual and guiding light to me in my work of the past thirty years."<sup>3</sup>

His father's deep penetration into the fundamentals of law and law cases made a lifelong impression on his son. Says Richard W. Jr.:

---

<sup>1</sup>Richard W. Young Jr., to Minerva Young and family, April 11, 1945.

<sup>2</sup>Idem.

<sup>3</sup>Idem.

He was never satisfied with merely finding a legal decision or two in support of his position. He analyzed the philosophy and fundamental reasons which actuated the conclusions arrived at by the Courts in order to determine if they were based upon essentially sound and equitable principles....His remarkable sense of logic, his sound judgment, his wide and varied experiences, his intuitive psychological common-sense gave him a rather uncanny insight into what every lawyer of high ideals is constantly searching for--truth and justice. In our frequent discussions of legal questions he had occasion quite frequently to point out to me where I was either illogical or unsound in my conclusion, or had prematurely arrived at an opinion. He was never petulant or irritable about such advice, and I do not remember that I ever took offense, or umbrage about it....<sup>1</sup>

On several occasions he remembered that his father remarked that whatever success he had attained in the legal profession was not due to "scintillating brilliance, but to hard and laborious work."<sup>2</sup> The same views are restated to a reporter from the Improvement Era.<sup>3</sup> Richard W. felt that the most important qualifications for a young man to have in order to succeed in law included: natural aptitude, a taste for a lawyer's life, honesty, and a sense of public spirit. Vitally important is that a young man "ought not to be afraid of work... [in fact should be] naturally industrious."<sup>4</sup>

In evaluating areas of lesser professional strength, Richard Jr., indicates that because of his father's gentle nature, he was unwilling to strenuously cross-examine witnesses. Always in Court, his deportment was courteous to witnesses, opposing counsels and judges. This attitude and behavior pertained to antagonistic witnesses as well. He "seldomly

---

<sup>1</sup> Idem.

<sup>2</sup> Idem.

<sup>3</sup> John Henry Evans, "Some Men Who Have Done Things," Improvement Era, 13 (1910), 739.

<sup>4</sup> Idem.

employed the flamboyant, oratorical style of many of the older school of lawyers."<sup>1</sup>

Answering the perennial problem of whether an honest lawyer should defend an accused when the lawyer knows that the man is guilty, Richard W. voices an important belief in the dignity and rights of man before the law:

I don't seek for a guilty man to come to me with his case, still I don't think I ought to refuse. If a person is to be punished for a crime, it must be only by due process of law. Everyone accused is innocent before the law unless he is proved guilty. And so, in civilized countries, even a criminal has rights, and these rights must be protected. He is entitled to a fair and impartial trial by his peers.

Now if I took such a case, I would say to my client: "If you do not wish to plead guilty I will see to it that your trial is conducted fairly. There shall be no subordinating of witnesses, no wresting of the law or the evidence, and if there is any extenuating circumstances I will put it clearly and honestly. If you wish anything more than this, you had better go to someone else."<sup>2</sup>

Turning next to Richard W.'s political activities one is impressed with their brevity. Although he had been mentioned on several occasions for public office, <sup>3</sup> his only candidacy was for the Supreme Court in Utah in 1904. Like the political trial of nine years previously, Richard sustained another defeat.<sup>4</sup> Members of the family of Richard W. indicate that he had no political ambitions in the normal sense. It is true that

<sup>1</sup> Richard W. Young Jr. to Louis P. Murray August 5, 1959.

<sup>2</sup> John Henry Evans, op. cit., 739.

<sup>3</sup> See Journal History, August 10, 1904, p 12. Previously see February 6, 1900, p 3; July 20, 1900, p 9.

<sup>4</sup> Supra, 81 "Richard W. Young," In Memoriam, (Salt Lake City, 1920). 5. Contains a biographical sketch of Richard W. Young, funeral ceremonies, and resolutions of respect.

he twice attempted to obtain a seat on the Supreme Court of Utah, but the consensus of opinion places this aspiration in the Legal rather than the political areas of ambitions.<sup>1</sup>

During the period from his return from the Philippines until the beginning of World War I, Richard W. engaged in many religious activities. In one of his early assignments he was designated as the Sunday School Superintendent of the 20th Ward Sunday School.<sup>2</sup> In the eyes of one of his young sons the restoration or ~~order~~ in Sunday School ranked as perhaps the outstanding achievement of his father in this job.<sup>3</sup> Several adolescent trouble makers ignored an appeal to self discipline from his father. With the continuation of their disturbance Richard W. walked to where they were sitting, and pulled up their chieftain and marched him out of the Church. Other companions were assisted out of the Church in the same manner. Each left the Church with the admonishment that they were welcome to come back just as soon as they desired providing they acted the part of gentlemen. Since almost every one of the boys were larger than Richard W., his action made a most vivid impression on the mind of his son.<sup>4</sup>

During the early part of this civilian period Richard W. served his Church as the President of the 13th Quorum of Seventies. Then on the 1st of April 1904 he was called to be Stake President of the Ensign Stake.<sup>5</sup> Like many other of his responsibilities this one continued until his death in 1919. One of his counselors in the Stake Presidency from 1904 to 1919 says of him:

<sup>1</sup>Richard W. Young Jr. to Louis P. Murray August 5, 1959; Interview with Dr. Clark Young July 29, 1959.

<sup>2</sup>Interview with Dr. Clark Young June 26, 1959.

<sup>3</sup>Idem.

<sup>4</sup>Idem.

<sup>5</sup>B. H. Roberts, "Brigadier General Richard W. Young, Improvement Era.



I learned to love him....He was as dear to me as my own father, and I counted him as my best friend.

...He has been a friend to the friendless; he has been all that he could be to those who were in distress. I have seen him put his arms around a little waif in the street, whose feet were bare in the winter time, and take him to the great store, Z.C.M.I. [Zion's Cooperative Mercantile Institution] and buy him shoes in order that he might be warm. I have gone with him to the home of a widowed mother, whose children had become wards of the Juvenile Court, and he put his arms around them and was endeavoring to make them live the lives of Latter-day Saints.<sup>1</sup>

One of the men that served under him as Bishop of the 20th Ward, C. Clarence Neslin, states that Richard W. was loved by all his bishops.<sup>2</sup> Though a spiritual man, he felt that President Young showed basic practicality in all his activities. His outstanding qualities included consistency, fairness, tolerance, decisiveness, culture and charity. Mr. Neslin knew of no one who deservedly needed help that had not received it from President Young. He recalls no instances when Richard W. did not rise to the defense of persons needing defense. Even though persuasive, President Young was not a shouter, or exhorter in the revivalist sense. Consequently he often did not appear spectacular. Yet through his modesty, ability, and kindness he was beloved by the people in the Stake.

During the Constitutional Convention for the State of Utah [1895] the polygamy question loomed as an important issue to be discussed and legally settled.<sup>3</sup> This centered around the legal status of polygamous

---

Era, 23 (1920), 324. Stake President's Certificate in Richard W. Young scrapbook.

<sup>1</sup> John M. Knight, "Richard W. Young," In Memoriam, 13-14. All quotes from John M. Knight are from this reference.

<sup>2</sup> Interview with C. Clarence Neslin June 10, 1959.

<sup>3</sup> Supra, 80 For discussion of whole problem of Polygamy in the post Manifesto period see B. H. Roberts, Comprehensive History of the Church, (Salt Lake City, 1930), V, 325.

relationships that had been contracted before its proscription by the Mormon Church. The delegates elected John Henry Smith as Convention Chairman. Mr. Smith was not only a polygamist but also an apostle in the Mormon Church. B. H. Roberts, one of the delegates and also a polygamist, states that through the Varian Amendment the problem was satisfactorily concluded. This Amendment essentially outlawed new polygamous marriages, but did not ban cohabitation for those who had been married into polygamy before the Manifesto. B. H. Roberts' unhappiness with fellow-Churchman, Democrat, and close friend Richard W. Young resulted from the latter's work on the Code Commission.<sup>1</sup> Roberts recounts that the Code Commission's solution to the polygamy problem outlawed both new polygamous marriages and cohabitation in the old marriages. Practically, however, Mr. Roberts maintains that formula devised by the Constitutional Convention was the one "accepted and acted upon in the State of Utah, and despite some slight variations...became the settled public policy of the State of Utah."<sup>2</sup>

In the November 1898 election B. H. Roberts became the U. S. Congressional representative from Utah. When the news that Utah had elected a polygamist to Congress, a wave of protest rolled through the land. Elements unfriendly to the Mormons spearheaded the attack from the local scene. In the face of such strong and national counter campaigning, B. H. Roberts was permanently denied his seat on January 25th, 1900.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Supra, 78-9, Roberts, Comprehensive History, V, 327.

<sup>2</sup>Idem.

<sup>3</sup>Joseph Fielding Smith, Essentials in Church History (Salt Lake City, 1950), 618.

Three years later the Utah Senate elected the Mormon Apostle, Reed Smoot to the U. S. Senate. Although not a polygamist, the charges levied against him stated that his election represented a union of Church and State, that with the other Church officials he still believed in and preached polygamy, and that he and his high Church colleagues protected polygamous offenders.<sup>1</sup> An additional charge maintained that he was an active polygamist himself.<sup>2</sup> Despite the fact that he received Senate seat, Senator Smoot's eligibility was thrown into the Rules Committee. In two years the Committee's investigation ran through an impressive list of anti-Mormon, friendly non-Mormon, and Mormon witnesses.<sup>3</sup> The investigation of the stated charges in essence became an investigation of the Mormon Church.

Although a detailed description of Smoot proceedings exceeds the intent of this paper, special note must be made of one of the witnesses who appeared before the investigative committee; Richard W. Young. He began his testimony on the 17th of January 1905. He was questioned widely on his own personal beliefs, experiences and impressions. For the most part Richard answered questions very tersely. Occasionally for the sake of greater clarity he expanded his remarks. The following lawyer versus lawyer dialogue is typical:

Mr. TAYLOR: You were one of those who felt that the manifesto was inspired?

Mr. YOUNG: That was my belief; yes, sir.

Mr. TAYLOR: That is the belief of the Church generally; I mean the Church membership?

Mr. YOUNG: It is.

<sup>1</sup>Roberts, Comprehensive History, V, 392-99.

<sup>2</sup>Ibid., V, 393.

<sup>3</sup>Reed Smoot Proceedings, U. S. 59th Congr. 1st sess. Senate Doc., 486, (1904-06), I-IV.

Mr. TAYLOR: Did you understand that it was necessary that the Church should meet in conference and vote that it was an inspiration before it would be accepted as such?

Mr. YOUNG: I understand that to be the rule.

Mr. TAYLOR: What was the effect of the rule--to accept the inspiration or to admit that it was an inspiration of revelation?

Mr. YOUNG: I think probably you might say that it was both.

Mr. TAYLOR: So that whatever God revealed as His will and wish upon the people was not to be obeyed by them unless they consented to it?

Mr. YOUNG: With reference to that point, my belief would be this: Whether the people accepted such a rule or not would not alter the fact as to whether it was inspired or revealed or not. It is a mere question whether the person voting for it desires to live in conformity with it or not.<sup>1</sup>

Richard W. denied any knowledge of Church political influence.

In fact he felt that the local situation in Utah made the Mormon people less free than their non-Mormon contemporaries. He explained this thought by saying:

I believe that [the restricted independence of Mormons] is true largely because of their desire to avoid the suspicions of being influenced by the Church. I may say that has been my own frame of mind many times when I have gone to the polls. I have voted for men on my ticket with whom I was not acquainted.... In favor of some old-time friend of mine who was upon the opposition ticket...I believe that [this feeling] extends very largely among the Mormon people.<sup>2</sup>

Often a man's inner nature is exposed by a substantial attack against his beliefs or against his emotional security. When the questioning of Mr. Robert W. Taylor became substantial, when in the eyes of many Richard's views might be held as damaging if not damning, his demeanor appeared to remain calm and steady throughout. In one such instance Mr. Taylor began by reading an excommunication notice from Presidents Joseph and Hyrum Smith against an errant brother. Although polygamy had not been

---

<sup>1</sup> Ibid., II, 958. Judge Robert W. Taylor was the counsel for complaints. During the B. H. Roberts hearings he chaired the House Committee investigating Mr. Roberts' right to sit in the House of Representatives. Roberts, Comprehensive History, V, 396.

<sup>2</sup> Reed Smoot Proceedings, II, 958.

formerly announced, it reputedly had been preached and practiced at the time of referenced excommunication. Continued Mr. Taylor:<sup>1</sup>

Now, what do you understand was the theory upon which these men, whom you and all good Mormons believe were good men, published this notice after the celestial marriage revelation had been received and reduced to writing and after polygamy had commenced to be practiced by Joseph Smith himself and some other?

Mr. YOUNG: What is the date of that publication, Mr. Taylor?

Mr. TAYLOR: In 1844.

Mr. YOUNG: I might, possibly in a quibbling way, explain that notice in this way, that polygamy was not to be preached by the Church at that time--that is quite generally conceded--and that any person who preached polygamy was subject to the discipline of the Church. The language there used is that it had preached polygamy and other--"

Mr. TAYLOR: "False and corrupt."

Mr. YOUNG: "False and corrupt doctrines."

Mr. TAYLOR: Yes.

Mr. YOUNG: I do not know that it is necessary, in the construction of that language, that the adjectives "false" and "corrupt" should apply to polygamy. He had preached polygamy and he had preached other doctrines that were false and corrupt. But assuming that the language means what I fancy you have in mind, I could not and would not in my own feelings feel to excuse that denial; rather, I would have no sufficient explanation of it.

It does not necessarily follow, Mr. Taylor, because you or I might admire a man, believe him to be generally a righteous man, that we believe he never does a thing which is wrong. And I may, so far as I am concerned, accept Joseph Smith and his life work, without necessarily accepting any foibles of which he might have been guilty.<sup>2</sup>

Under questioning from the Committee Chairman, the Chairman condescended to acknowledge what he thought must be an error. He further inquired:

I had an impression--and I think it must be an error--that you regard the practice of polygamy as right?

Mr. YOUNG: If I might modify, or not answer the question categorically--

---

<sup>1</sup>Orson F. Whitney, Popular History of Utah (Salt Lake City, 1916), 84-5.

<sup>2</sup>Reed Smoot Proceedings, II, 965.

The CHAIRMAN: Certainly.

Mr. YOUNG: I regard the principal abstractly as right, not the practice.

The CHAIRMAN: If it were not for the laws of the land prohibiting it, you would then believe that the practice would be right?

Mr. YOUNG: I would.<sup>1</sup>

With the knowledge that Richard W. Young held the position of Stake President, and with the light of the preceding admission firmly in hand, the Committee Chairman closely pressed his witness for actions that he might have taken against two polygamous bishops who served under him. Richard W. admitted knowledge of Bishop Romney living in polygamy, but had no knowledge of the other bishop's polygamous affiliations.

The Chairman proceeded as follows:

I simply want to get at the facts. What steps have you taken to dissuade him [Bishop Romney] from the practice?

Mr. YOUNG: None whatever.

The CHAIRMAN: Have you ever mentioned the subject to him?

Mr. YOUNG: Never.

The CHAIRMAN: And yet he is one of your bishops?

Mr. YOUNG: Yes, sir.

The CHAIRMAN: Have you spoken to other bishops concerning whom there are rumors that he is living in polygamous cohabitation?

Mr. YOUNG: Never.

The CHAIRMAN: To ascertain whether it was true or not?

Mr. YOUNG: Never.

The CHAIRMAN: Have you made any inquiry among your people in the stake to ascertain the extent to which polygamous cohabitation is practiced?

Mr. YOUNG: No special inquiry; no, sir.

The CHAIRMAN: Have you made any general inquiry?

Mr. YOUNG: No further than my observation would extend.

Mr. CHAIRMAN: And you have taken no steps, either by council or otherwise, to dissuade people from the practice?

Mr. YOUNG: From living in polygamous cohabitation?

The CHAIRMAN: Yes.

Mr. YOUNG: No, sir; none whatever.<sup>2</sup>

Denying that there has been any teaching of polygamy, insofar as he knew, he summarized the polygamous issue by saying: "Both Mormon and gentile,

---

<sup>1</sup> ibid., II, 969.

<sup>2</sup> idem.

as I believe I may correctly state, [I believe] that polygamy is practically dead, and that a new marriage is an expiring flicker of the old situation."<sup>1</sup> Certainly if any polygamous marriages had been conducted since the Manifesto, they would be invalid, Richard concluded.<sup>2</sup>

It appears then Richard W. in reality supported his friend B. H. Roberts and the polygamist formula devised by the State Constitutional Convention,<sup>3</sup> viz., that new polygamous marriages were unlawful, but that the polygamous relationships entered into before the declaration of the Manifesto were in fact valid.

The reaction of the Salt Lake Tribune to Richard W.'s testimony has the familiar ring of the general background situation as well as resonant overtones of previous attacks:<sup>4</sup>

#### AN OFFICER AND A GENTLEMAN

Major R. W. Young...[is] a graduate of West Point. As such wherever the army officer is known the Maj. passes currently as an officer and gentleman. He is a graduate of Columbia Law School, and as a member of the bar he is supposed to be bound by its ethics.

Utah has been proud of Maj. Young and no one in the State desires to entertain anything but the best and most complimentary feelings toward him.

But there are two or three things in his testimony which are quite irreconcilable with truth and with intelligence at the same time. If he spoke with a desire to state facts he evidently is scarcely consistent with the high order of brains with which he has been credited; and if he spoke with intelligence, his utterances scarcely accord with the usual reputation of a West Point graduate.

Major Young said that there is no teaching of polygamy, and has been none, since the Manifesto was issued....

<sup>1</sup> Ibid., 11, 969.

<sup>2</sup> Idem.

<sup>3</sup> Supra, 126-27

<sup>4</sup> Supra, 63-4, 110

He denied Church Interference in politics. Maj. Young has had ample opportunity in Utah to know the will of the Church hierarchy has been supreme in politics and in legislation since Statehood.

He said he did not know that the chief authorities of the Church could secure the attendance of an apostle who was desired as a witness. Major Young (unless the climate of the Philippines affected his brain as it has demented several of our returned soldiers who have gone into mental hospitals) knows that an apostle could not hold his position and the fellowship of his quorum one hour after his refusal to obey any such mandate from the presidency of the Church.<sup>1</sup>

There are no known rebuttals to this attack on the part of Richard W. It appears that he left his actions and words alone stand as his defense, as he had done five years previously.<sup>2</sup> There later followed an exchange of blasts in which Richard W. charged the Tribune had slandered the President of the Church for the latter's testimony in the Smoot hearing. But this discussion centered more on the validity of President Joseph F. Smith's testimony than on the person of Richard W. Young.<sup>3</sup>

During the period under discussion Richard W. spoke occasionally before General Conference of the Mormon Church.<sup>4</sup> He continued to write primarily for the Church magazine: Improvement Era.<sup>5</sup> In one of the notable

<sup>1</sup>Journal History, January 20, 1905, p 5, 6. See Tribune editorial, same date. Two apostles, Matthias F. Cowley and John W. Taylor, later resigned. Their action of October 28, 1905 was based on the view that the Manifesto was applicable to the United States only. Roberts, Comprehensive History, V, 400.

<sup>2</sup>Supra, 110.

<sup>3</sup>Journal History, March 30, 1906, p 2, 3, 7.

<sup>4</sup>Journal History, October 7, 1906, p 5, April 6, 1908, p 13-14.

<sup>5</sup>See Bibliography for articles written by Richard W. Young.



FIG. 7

SOME of the REPRESENTATIVES  
of the  
TWENTY-FIRST INTERNATIONAL IRRIGATION CONGRESS

October 5-9, 1914  
Calgary, Alberta, Canada

Third Row:		Richardson		Curtis Grunwald		Andrew Miller								
Second Row:		Unidentified		W. T. Byrd		Nielson		George Albert Smith		DR Ralph				
First Row:	Unidentified	Finkle		Arthur Hooker		Richard W. Young		J. B. Case		Jay Newman		Hinkle		D.A.P. Frost



exceptions he took the Tribune to task for reported slander of the President of the Mormon Church, Joseph F. Smith, as just mentioned.

Richard W. Young expended a great deal of his time and effort in irrigational problems and organizations. Since several of the firms that Richard W. represented were vitally tied to irrigation,<sup>1</sup> Richard W. began an extended study of the whole field of irrigational law and problems. From this point of departure his progress can be easily traced through the Governor's correspondence from 1907 to 1915.<sup>2</sup> Throughout those years he received appointments to conferences all over the Intermountain area and Canada. They included the International Irrigation Congresses, the Trans-Mississippi Commercial Congress, Dry Farming Congress and Public Lands Congress. He rose in prominence in the International Irrigation Congress. from delegate in 1907 to President in the years 1912 and 1914. By now it would seem unnatural if it were discovered that Richard W. failed to integrate into his irrigational activity a higher Idealism than water, dirt and money. In this anticipation the reader is not to be disappointed.

In his first major speech at the 1914 International Irrigation Congress at Calgary, Canada, President Young stated:

Happy our lot to play apart--though mine is but to strut for a brief moment upon the stage--in the modern miracle play of irrigation; to be the means, though ever so humble, of contributing to the happiness of mankind; and glorious the thought that we act and execute not merely for the moment but for generations yet unborn!<sup>3</sup>

It certainly seems proper that the grandson of the famed colonizer and founder of irrigation among Anglo-Saxons, Brigham Young, should play

---

<sup>1</sup>Bear River Water Company, Utah Idaho Sugar, Austin Brothers Livestock Company, Davis County Canal Company.

<sup>2</sup>Filed in Utah State Historical Society. See also In Memoriam, p 5.

<sup>3</sup>International Irrigation Congress (Washington, 1915), 11.

an active role in more advanced and extensive irrigation activities. The modern scope of such projects staggered the imagination. According to Richard W. they included legal, engineering, agricultural, scientific, social, and governmental problems. But the monuments of their work would longer survive and better serve mankind than the grandiose cities of present civilizations; even as the vast aqueducts and reservoirs of the Roman era have longer survived the passing years and better served mankind than their counterparts, the beautiful Roman cities.<sup>1</sup>

A general study without some recognition of Richard's family life would be woefully inadequate. When one adds to the regular demands of his profession his heavy Church responsibilities<sup>2</sup> and those of a family of nine children,<sup>3</sup> one wonders how he had time for his family or for himself at all. Further, when his responsibilities are weighed against the reverential attitude of the family towards their father, an evaluator's first reaction might be suspicion, curiosity or admiration.

Truman R. Young assesses his father in these words:

[Throughout the life of Truman no one whom he had met had] approached close enough to let his shadow fall on the ideal that I carry with me. If I could, I would alter the circumstances of my life to the extent that I could have enjoyed and profited by another four or five years of father's association and precept before he passed away. His character and personality are ever before me and the knowledge that he loved me during his lifetime is a reservoir of strength and warmth that I draw from with increasing frequency as I grow older.<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Idem.

<sup>2</sup> Richard W. spent most of each Sunday in Church work and activities, many and occasionally all week-nights. Interview with Dr. Clark Young June 26, 1959.

<sup>3</sup> The children of Richard and Minerva are: Mrs. Lucian Ray (Margaret), Mrs. Arthur T. Burton (Mary), Richard W. Young Jr., Mrs. Samuel D. Thurman (Retta), Mrs. Adam S. Bennion (Minerva), Edmond Young (Died in infancy), Clark Young, Mrs. Virgil Dorton (Connie), Truman R. Young, and Ralph E. Young.

<sup>4</sup> Truman Young to Clark Young, April 17, 1945.

FIG. 8

Family Cabin  
in  
Brighton Canyon

Family Home  
Salt Lake City



Dr. Clark Young writes:

To me, as a boy and as a young man, father was more than a mere individual. He was the orbit I revolved around, an influence which seemed to orient most of my thought and acts. And when he died it seemed a large chunk of my horizon had plunged into the sea....<sup>1</sup>

Although beginning with example and idealism he himself naturally lived before his family, one of the foremost keys in successfully influencing his children included activity.<sup>2</sup> He took his boys to baseball and football games and track meets. He often played "catch" with them in the yard. As often as possible he read stories to his children. The family favorites were Brer Rabbit and Uncle Remus. Father Young became the director, the complete set of actors, and the off-stage sound effects. One of the choicest of the children's recollections revolved around the annual exodus to Brighton Canyon. There the family spent approximately six weeks of each summer. Since the present day trip of one hour, then required one day, Richard only was able to join his family during his vacation period. He had an insatiable love for the outdoors. He took his children and their friends on long hikes and horseback rides all over the mountains. Sometimes these trips lasted two days. An invitation to be a part of these expeditions was a much sought for privilege by the children's friends. At night the Young family and friends from nearby cabins would gather together for long appreciated community song fests and programs.

---

<sup>1</sup> Clark Young to Richard W. Young family, April 19, 1945.

<sup>2</sup> The information in this paragraph is a summary of the interviews with the following members of the Richard W. Young family: Mary (June 26), Richard W. Jr. (May 22), Minerva (June 9), Clark (April 15 and June 26), Connie (June 5), Ralph (June 15). All 1959. Also letter from Truman R. Young to Louis P. Murray, June 17, 1959. For clarity the personal names of the women have been used in reference.

In one way or another Richard W. maintained an intimate personal tie with each of his children. In addition to the activities already mentioned he took walks with them. Dr. Clark Young recalls that when he was in college his father occasionally walked up to the University of Utah with him. During this mile and a quarter jaunt he and his father had an opportunity to talk over Dr. Young's development and adjustments in life. It gave Father Young an opportunity to feel the pulse of the University community as seen through the eyes of his son. Richard and his daughter Mary took long walks during which they recited quotations from their mutual love, Shakespeare. Mary remembers hearing her father say, "one of the first things I want to do after I die is meet William Shakespeare."<sup>1</sup>

Richard W. encouraged his children to read worthwhile books. He set before them the somewhat debatable virtue of buying so many books that his wife complained that it "was making them poor."<sup>2</sup> On one occasion he offered his son, Clark, \$1.00 if he would read Swiss Family Robinson.

All the children loved the personable nature of their father. Whether it was buying "all-day suckers at Lloyd's Grocery Store--strawberry, cherry, lemon or chocolate, take your pick," or stopping to talk to a little child on the street, or in maintaining a fascinating dialogue at the dinner table--company or no company," he was an inspiration to them.<sup>3</sup> They remember and love him for his little practical jokes, or his twist of words. Since Mary couldn't tolerate a ticking clock in the room, Richard W. gathered up and hid in her room so many clocks that it took her over

<sup>1</sup> Interview with Mary Young Burton June 16, 1959.

<sup>2</sup> Interview with Dr. Clark Young June 29, 1959.

<sup>3</sup> Clark Young to Young family, April 19, 1945. Interview with Mary Young Burton June 16, 1959.



an hour to find them all.<sup>1</sup> To one of his daughters, he exclaimed that the predominance of one grade on her report card "fairly well made him sick."<sup>2</sup>

Attributed to his West Point training is the memorable characteristic of family discipline and order. His daughter Minerva recollects that their household ran like clockwork.<sup>3</sup> Disciplinary actions against his children did not follow generally the rigid pattern of parents, i.e., spanking. Two of his daughters who had been repeatedly remiss in hanging up their clothes were aghast on their arrival home to find their underwear and other clothes carefully laid out near the sidewalk leading up to the house.<sup>4</sup> On another occasion one of the boys retained a very unmilitary posture while walking with his father. Not responding to oral correction, he was requested to walk behind his father at a distance of twenty paces so as to disguise their relationship.<sup>5</sup> When another youthful son had taken some money out of his mother's purse and had graciously hosted the neighborhood children at the candy store, he politely asked: "Son, where did you get the money to buy all of this candy?" When told that he had earned it cleaning out a chicken coop, Father Young complimented his son on his industriousness, but added: "I want to be sure that my boys are learning to do a good job. Get your hat, son, and we'll go down there and inspect your job." After walking a short distance from home, his boy confessed the truth.<sup>6</sup> It was not only such actions as these that brought

<sup>1</sup> Interview with Mary Young Burton June 16, 1959.

<sup>2</sup> Interview with Connie Young Dorton June 5, 1959.

<sup>3</sup> Interview with Mary Young Burton June 16, 1959.

<sup>4</sup> Interview with Connie Young Dorton June 5, 1959.

<sup>5</sup> Interview with Dr. Clark Young June 26, 1959.

<sup>6</sup> Interview with Richard W. Young Jr. May 22, 1959.

about conformance to duty and a reverence for their father, - even in discipline-but also the sure knowledge that any major indiscretions on their part would painfully hurt their father.<sup>1</sup> Family discipline, then, rested on a primary foundation of love and respect.

In social and personal relationships Richard shows another quality worthy of notice. It might be felt that his modesty and natural reservation might have restricted his social relationship to his family and very close friends. Such a contention seems to be highly erroneous. B. H. Roberts says that in "social life, General Young was seen at his best. A gracious host, a delightful guest. Varied and brilliant in conversation, full of anecdote, repartee and jest---social gatherings were his intellectual play grounds, and he enjoyed them with a zest that made them worthwhile, and himself always a central figure of the social scene."<sup>2</sup>

Richard's daughter Mary recollects many visits to their home of her father's West Point classmates.. When Charles Evan Hughes came to visit, she especially remembers the warm friendship shown between Mr. Hughes and her father. In fact, "it was the same with all of father's friends. Everyone seemed to enjoy themselves very much."<sup>3</sup>

Earlier chapters have accounted more for the activities of Richard's wife Minerva.<sup>4</sup> All indications point to her major contributions to the spirit of the household, and a continuous and faithful support of her husband and family. The President of the University of Utah, and a later

<sup>1</sup> Interview with Dr. Clark Young June 29, 1959.

<sup>2</sup> Roberts, Improvement Era, Vol 23, 325.

<sup>3</sup> Interview with Mary Young Burton August 15, 1959.

<sup>4</sup> Supra, Chapters 1-3.

FIG. 9

MINERVA RICHARDS YOUNG



apostle in the Mormon Church writes: "I know you well enough to understand that whoever writes faithfully of the life and achievements of Richard W. Young must write of your large share in making your husband's life successful."<sup>1</sup> Their daughter Connie says:

What I remember most is our wonderful home life. The fine spirit and humor and affection which was predominant in our home all through our younger days. I guess there never was a father and mother like them in all the world.<sup>2</sup>

But Connie remembers that as much as she loved Papa, his many trips East were "always a great source of joy to me due to the fact that Ma was always so easy to "get around."<sup>3</sup> During her father's absence there were many more after-dark games of kick-the-can.

Mrs. Susa Young Gates pays a special tribute to the wife of her soldier nephew by saying that although Richard W. fought in foreign lands and there won honor, his wife deserves the greater wreath of glory. This long time family friend continues, that when she meets her distinguished nephew on the other side that he will rise and bless her for the recognition paid his wife.<sup>4</sup>

In the field of the arts and sports Richard W. Jr. indicates his father read from a wide selection of books.<sup>5</sup> He loved philosophy, religion old classical literature, and Shakespearean drama. He read before retiring and again during the early morning hours before the family arose. For a number of years he was Secretary of the old Salt Lake Theatre.<sup>6</sup> Among the

<sup>1</sup>John A. Widtsoe to Minerva Richards Young, April 10, 1920.

<sup>2</sup>Evaluation of Connie Young Dorton, April 19, 1945, (Approximate date), Richard W. Young collection of papers.

<sup>3</sup>Idem.

<sup>4</sup>Susa Young Gates, "My Hero and Heroine," Improvement Era, 23 (1920), 146-47. See Appendix VII.

<sup>5</sup>Interview with Richard W. Young Jr. May 22, 1959

<sup>6</sup>Supra, 14, 45-46. George D. Pyper, The Romance of an Old Playhouse (Salt Lake City, 1928), 334. R. W. maintained a lifelong interest in the theatre.

performers of the entertainment world, Richard's special love was Sir Harry Lauder, the famous Scottish comedian and song writer. Although it may be true that he was anxious to take his sons to these events as a means of cementing comradeship, it is also important and true that he personally loved and enjoyed sports activities. Richard frequently took or went to the games with Orlando C. Beebe. This local Mark Twain provided an abundance of entertainment to players and spectators alike. No one enjoyed his performances more than Richard. Richard became friendly with the local players. One of these, short-stop Billy Orr of the Salt Lake Bees, frequently called on Richard W. at his office. The two of them enjoyed talking over previous games, tactics, and players.<sup>1</sup>

In addition to all the interests and responsibilities previously mentioned, Richard W. Young's association with education must be noted. For a period of years he had the distinction (or headache) of being a trustee for Brigham Young College and the Brigham Young University and on the Board of Regents for the University of Utah. Such an assignment likely had no parallels in local history. In one particular issue that involved interests of the University of Utah and Brigham Young University, an observer relates that Richard's handling of the problem "made us feel that were he called upon, at the University of Utah, to pass judgment on a matter affecting us he would be mindful of the rightful interests of the absent."<sup>2</sup> John A. Widtsoe expresses his appreciation to Richard W. by saying: "He was a prime instrument in bringing me to the University as President and the faith he had that I would make good is one of the

---

<sup>1</sup>Interview with Dr. Clark Young June 3, 1959.

<sup>2</sup>"Brigham Young University Loses Staunch Friend in General Young," White and Blue, XXIII (1920, 321.

impelling motives to keep me here under the strenuous conditions that I have to meet altogether too frequently."<sup>1</sup>

In summary one notes that in all the activities and associations of Richard W. Young with other people, he appeared to have left a positive contribution on either events or the lives of people. What his reaction to the major historical event of the first quarter of the 20th Century, the World War, and his activities in that war, becomes the next topic of consideration.

---

<sup>1</sup>John A. Widtsoe to Minerva Young, April 21, 1920.

## CHAPTER VII

THE CRUSADE FOR FREEDOM, ARMY TOUR III (1917-1919)



## CHAPTER VII

### THE CRUSADE FOR FREEDOM

After the United States declared war on the Central Powers on April 6, 1917, Richard W. Young served his State and Nation as the Vice-Chairman of the State Defense Council.<sup>1</sup> But whether or not that service should be extended to active duty in the military presented quite a different problem. He was then fifty-nine years old. His prior service had been willingly offered and distinguishedly rendered. Would it not be better to let some of the younger men take over the burden of this new war?

While deliberating this crucial question, his son, Richard W. Jr., volunteered his services to General Enoch Crowder, Judge Advocate of the army.<sup>2</sup> This West Point associate of Father Young immediately accepted the offer.<sup>3</sup> With his son going away in the service, someone should stay at home to continue their law business. The issue appeared to be settled. He had not reckoned, however, with a deluge of letters and personal requests--in fact, demands--from friends and fellow citizens that he should be the leader of their loyal sons.<sup>4</sup> Added to these many voices came the influential requests from the President of the Mormon Church and the Governor of the State. Richard W. Jr. recollects that the problem

---

<sup>1</sup>Who's Who in America, 1918-1919 (Chicago, 1918) X, 3045.

<sup>2</sup>Interview with Richard W. Young Jr., May 22, 1959.

<sup>3</sup>General Crowder, then Colonel, had served with Richard W. Young on the Philippine Supreme Court with Richard W. Young.

<sup>4</sup>Richard W. Young Jr. to L. P. Murray, August 5, 1959. Interview with Dr. Clark Young, July 29, 1959.

resolved itself shortly after a summons from the Governor. Governor Bamberger bluntly informed Richard W. Jr.: "...Damn it, I want him to go--he's got to go, but he won't because you're going."<sup>1</sup> In reply to young Richard's protests the Governor pointed out his father's background and previous contributions. Richard W. Jr. could better serve, he was told, by freeing his father. Reluctantly Richard Jr. acceded and withdrew his application.

On the 26th of June a large group of Utah citizens had assembled in the Salt Lake Theatre for a patriotic meeting. The announcement that Richard W. had accepted an appointment as the Regimental Commander of the Utah Field Artillery brought the audience to their feet in enthusiastic applause. In a response shortly afterwards the new commander told the people:

I tremble at the present duty but I take it; and I pledge myself to do my utmost to uphold the honor of the State and Nation, and to strive to the utmost as God may permit me...I am here tonight to show that I am consistent with that which I am asking of you. What I ask is, not that you get in this thing, but, let us get in.<sup>2</sup>

The populace of Utah expressed great satisfaction with Richard's appointment.<sup>3</sup> The local press pointed out his military background and outstanding military record in the Spanish American War. But above and beyond his professional qualifications, many recognized in him another factor, which to many of the local people was vitally important. The Logan Journal states some of this feeling with more than usual emphasis:

<sup>1</sup> Interview with Richard W. Young Jr., May 22, 1959.

<sup>2</sup> Improvement Era, 20 (1917), 851-52.

<sup>3</sup> See Salt Lake daily press, June 27-28, 1917.

The experience of most army officers is exclusively military. Such an officer regards his men as mere instruments for a purpose; as pawns in the game of war; never as individuals as American citizens, and as men, his equals.

With Colonel Young it is entirely different. He was brought up with the fathers of many of the men he will command; shared their boyhood sports and the pursuits of their manhood. He has the early Utah viewpoint, which is distinctly democratic and brotherly. He shares the hopes and ideals of the men who will serve under him. A majority of them are his co-religionists; the son of his brethren and sisters to whom he will feel a sense of accountability that no other officer could have. He will look after their welfare, both physical and moral, and because of his natural affection for them they will the more willingly render ready obedience to his commands. He will receive the maximum of respect and be freely tendered service that no other commander could secure without impressing upon his men the idea that in the army the submission required is too closely akin to slavery.<sup>1</sup>

The reaction of people out of the State, as reported in the local press, centered around the religious theme. It was not one of hostility, but of general interest that a grandson of Brigham Young had been appointed to lead the Utah Regiment.<sup>2</sup>

Having made up his mind to join in the great crusade, Richard W. threw himself into the activities of recruiting soldiers with admirable energy. As one reads the press dispatches Colonel Young's name is re-

---

<sup>1</sup>Logan Journal, June 28, 1917. One feels in this article the historic closeness of Johnston's Army and an inherent distrust of military commanders and military life. It breathes a genuine sense of relief that Utah's men will be spared the evils of traditional militarism. One wonders if the author of this article had been a disgruntled G.I. (Enlisted Man of the lower grades) from the Prussian Army.

<sup>2</sup>Out-of-State newsclips, Richard W. Young scrapbook.

peatedly mentioned as a participant in various meetings, parades, rallies, etc. One parade featured twenty-nine horses completely saddled without riders. This spectacle accompanied the anticipated invitation of "let's get in this thing together." Each day the newspapers carried the names of the men who had enlisted the day previously. The emotional support for the war effort appeared to run at a high pitch.

The effectiveness of the recruiting campaign cannot be doubted. A week after the speech of Colonel Young the Salt Lake Herald proudly reported that Utah had sent in the first "We're ready to go" message to the War Department.<sup>1</sup> Although this claim was later doubted,<sup>2</sup> the news of this accomplishment further sustained the momentum of the wave of enthusiasm.

In speaking of the efforts of the men and officers at their encampment at Jordan Narrows,<sup>3</sup> Colonel Young expressed sincere appreciation and admiration for their tireless efforts in learning the arts of war.<sup>3</sup> Eight hours were not enough to do the job. Men could be seen practicing military drills during off duty time. They were, in fact, "on their tiptoes all the time," said Colonel Young.<sup>4</sup>

A busy time was made busier by the many requests on Colonel Young's time. He spoke to many groups--civic and religious. He became the guest of honor at parties or dinners held by his family, the Relief Society of

<sup>1</sup>Salt Lake Herald, July 4, 1917.

<sup>2</sup>Salt Lake Tribune, July 5, 1917.

<sup>3</sup>Colonel Hamilton Gardner credits Richard W. with establishing and conducting an officer's training school at Jordan Narrows. He relates further that this was the first camp held at the Jordan Narrows in modern times. Hamilton Gardner Utah Territorial Militia, Unpublished Manuscript Utah History Society.

<sup>4</sup>Salt Lake Tribune, July 19, 1917.

his home stake, the Twentieth Ward, and finally a large banquet program held in the Hotel Utah by his friends in the Ensign Stake.<sup>1</sup> In addition he and his officers were feted at another banquet at the Hotel Utah. Approximately a year later Richard wrote that he would love to come home and see all of his family, but he couldn't bear to go through all the goodbyes again.<sup>2</sup>

After preliminary training had been completed at the Jordan Narrows encampment, the Regiment of Utah Artillery entrained for Camp Kearney, California, arriving there on the 13th of October.<sup>3</sup> The Utah Regiment had another training school in operation by the time that other organizations of the 65th Field Artillery Brigade had arrived. Commanded by General LeRoy S. Lyon, the 65th included two regiments from California, 143rd, 144th, and the 145th regiment from Utah, and the 115th Trench Mortar Battery and 115th Ammunition Train.<sup>4</sup>

In January 1918 they began intensive training, and held their first major field exercises the following month. After this they launched

<sup>1</sup>Banquet programs, Hotel Utah, August 23 and 28, 1917. Biographical folders, Church Historian's Office. Journal History of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, March 26, 1918. Contains daily and miscellaneous records, and newsclips of interest to the Church. Compiled by the Church Historian's Office, Salt Lake City. Hereafter called Journal History.

<sup>2</sup>Richard W. Young to Minerva Richards Young, September 12, 1918.

<sup>3</sup>Captain Paul Williams, "Brief Historical Sketch of the 65th Artillery Brigade," unpublished paper prepared at the request of Brigadier-General F. S. Strong, forwarded to General Strong on April 12, 1919, p 2. No indication has been found of Richard being blessed by Church authorities prior to his departure to California. In view of his reported blessing before leaving for West Point and the two blessings received prior to going to the Philippines in 1898 and 1899, it would seem highly unusual for him to have omitted such an important action. Supra, 114.

<sup>4</sup>Ibid., 3.

an expanded program for training junior officers.<sup>1</sup>

In mid-April 1918 General Lyon received word that he had been promoted to Major General, and that he would be transferred to a new command. Colonel Young replaced General Lyon in command and rank, being promoted to Brigadier General. From the 6th of May until the demobilization of the 65th Brigade, Richard W. served as its commander.<sup>2</sup> Richard W.'s former West Point friend, Major-General George H. Cameron, temporarily commanded the 40th Division, of which the 65th Brigade was a part. He recollects his experience of this period by saying:

Scanning the roster, it seemed only natural to find that the Utah regiment of Field Artillery was commanded by Col. Richard W. Young. When he reported, I found him little changed--affable but full of quiet determination and confidence...He possessed exceptional control over the men of his regiment, who were nearly all of the Mormon faith. With clean minds and bodies, these youngsters were as promising and orderly material as I have ever seen and with a commander of Young's experience and attainments the regiment made astonishing progress. In the middle of December 1917, infantry of the 40th Division advanced in a training exercise behind a real barrage laid down by the 145th Field Artillery (Utah). This, I believe, is a record.<sup>3</sup>

This same thought of military excellency is expressed by General Young at the time he left the 145th regiment. In this masterful oration he commends the men and officers by saying: "It is the consensus of official opinion that you have made an enviable record."<sup>4</sup> But calling to their attention that the past is but the preparation for a more important future, he says: "That record, all are confident, is but a

---

<sup>1</sup> Ibid., 4, 5.

<sup>2</sup> Journal History, April 17, 1918, p 4, May 6, 1918, p 5.

<sup>3</sup> "Richard W. Young," Annual Report of the Association of Graduates (1920), 107.

<sup>4</sup> Speech given to the 145th Artillery regiment at the relinquishment of command of General Richard W. Young, May 6, 1918. See Appendix VIII.

faint indication of the greater honors that must and will come to you through the real test and ordeal of war."

Prior to his promotion to Brigadier General, Richard W. served for a short time on an Efficiency Board at Fort Sill, Oklahoma.<sup>1</sup> While enroute to Fort Sill he had an opportunity to stop off at home. It again gave the many friends and family and opportunity to call upon their warrior for another round of speeches and comments.<sup>2</sup>

Back in California the finishing touches of the State's side training program were added by men of the 65th Artillery Brigade. During May and June they completed several long distance marches. Then in June some 1,100 men transferred out of the organization and sent overseas. Finally on the 24th of July 1918 the Brigade left Camp Kearney for New York. Leaving New York on the 15th of August, they arrived in Liverpool thirteen days later.<sup>3</sup>

Quite naturally during the lulls of activity occasioned by transportation or waiting for transportation, Dick Young reflected over the situation he was now in, thought about his family, and no doubt remembered with great pleasure the happiness that he brought into the life of a young boy from Riverside, California. This last incident began somewhat by chance. While surveying the seating situation in a Riverside, California theatre, he decided to sit next to a young boy, despite there being many other vacant seats. Shortly after sitting down he became aware that the boy had glued his attention to his rank insignia and the extraordinary neighbor. Not being able to restrain himself, the boy exclaimed: "Gee, are you a general?"<sup>4</sup> In

---

<sup>1</sup>Improvement Era, 21 (1918), 1074-76.

<sup>2</sup>Newsclips in Scrapbook of Richard W. Young.

<sup>3</sup>Williams, op. cit., 5, 6.

<sup>4</sup>Interview with Mary Burton, June 16, 1959.

this way a most unusual friendship was initiated. When the boy went home that evening he excitedly told his mother about "his" General. At first the mother thought her son was the victim of fancy. Yet after a local newspaper reported such an incident with an unidentified boy, she knew that it must be true. This newspaper report gave General Young's address at Camp Kearney. So Arthur Ocheltree insisted that he write his newly found idol a letter. When General Young replied, the boy was overjoyed. His mother gratefully acknowledged the kindness of Richard W., and reported that she had told her son that she wished that General Young were her General too. He retorted: "You can't have him."<sup>1</sup>

Arthur Ocheltree visited his friend at Camp Kearney a short time later. He then began sending elaborate presents and, of course, maintained his correspondence. These letters continued until the death of General Young. Though not momentous in many of the usual evaluations of men, this incident shows graphically the personal qualities of this officer. First in that he should seek out the boy, simply because he loved boys, and secondly that he should take time to continue the friendship through visits or letters.

Prior to leaving the United States he thought of his own active boys. When one of them had expressed a fervent desire to accompany his father overseas as his orderly, Richard W. wrote home jokingly: "Not much [ ] I want to fight this war in peace and quiet."<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Mrs. Cora B. Ocheltree to Brig. Gen. R. W. Young, June 17, 1918.

<sup>2</sup>Richard W. Young to Mary Young, August 2, 1918.



Soon after his arrival in England he wrote a little tribute to each member of the family.<sup>1</sup> He felt no fear of the pending conflict, nor had he felt any premonitions of future tragedy. But he was concerned about his ability to meet the challenge of his command. He writes: "I am extremely nervous about making good in my command. They are firing back better men than I."<sup>2</sup> The only other apprehensions expressed by General Young were for members of his family. He was especially concerned about the welfare of his daughter, Mary, who had volunteered as a nurse's aid. Subsequently, she received an assignment to American Lake, Washington. Since the flu<sup>3</sup> epidemic had taken many lives throughout the Nation, he fretted about her strength and health. Then in a fine tribute to his daughter's courage he says: "Well, Mary, you have done a great thing in volunteering--the very first even, to serve in a vital way. Oh how nurses are needed over here. There are great hospitals in which there... [are] no women--only men and they make unsatisfactory nurses. It is a vocation in which the magic touch of a woman's hand, the cheering sound of a woman's voice are priceless."<sup>3</sup>

In one of the best known examples of voiced dedication to duty, Richard W. Young tells his daughter, Mary: "I know how you feel--that life after all is worth living; that you are in the real service to your fellowmen. What, after all, matters if we should perish in the line of service and duty." Then returning to thoughts of her welfare he says: "My heart is overflowing with anxiety and love and admiration for you and my soul full of prayer for your comfort and blessing and preservation." Lastly he concludes: "I can view with some patience

---

<sup>1</sup>Richard W. Young to family, September 12, 1918.

<sup>2</sup>Richard W. Young to family, August 30, 1918. He later wrote to his daughter, Mary, that he seemed to be "fairly successful in the administration of affairs." Richard W. Young to Mary Young, October 30, 1918

<sup>3</sup>Richard W. Young to Mary Young, October 30, 1918.

my own fortunes, but I worry impatiently about my dear ones in danger.<sup>1</sup>

Once in France the major part of the 65th Artillery Brigade received their final training at Camp de Souge, twenty-five miles Southwest of Bordeaux. The 144th Regiment retrained with the 155mm Artillery pieces at Clermont-Ferrand in Central France. At the time of the signing of the Armistice on November 11th the Brigade had been declared ready for combat and ready to move into action.<sup>2</sup>

As a final stage in their preparation for combat duty General Young and some of his staff made an extensive tour of the front. Since the armistice occurred during that tour, his trip is an excellent eye witness account of the last days of the war and the early days of the armistice. Richard W. recorded his impressions and observations of this trip in a letter to his family. Because of the unusual time interval covered and the highly descriptive narrative, the major portion of the letter is attached as an appendix.<sup>3</sup> The General's comments on a wide variation of subjects, including geography, ideology, architecture, economic and social conditions, and, of course, military situation. Because of this broadness, it is possible to briefly refer to a few examples only. His evaluation of French beds is enlightening: "After sleeping on these most excellent beds, and in view of the fact that we spend such a large portion of our lives in bed, I have concluded that perhaps we are too careless in America as to the

---

<sup>1</sup>Idem. General Young worried also about the safety of his son-in-law, Virgil Dorton, who had taken up that very dangerous activity of flying.

<sup>2</sup>Williams, op. cit., 6, for information on training sites and combat ready status.

<sup>3</sup>See Appendix IX.

quality of our beds."<sup>1</sup>

Admitting that the French girls and women are probably the world's fairest, he regretfully notes that moral standard seems to be low. Because of this "France will never be rehabilitated unless she abandons licentiousness and develops the family spirit."

Considerable emotional feeling were generated by his observations of captured German officers. Of them he says: "The German officers here and elsewhere, wherever we saw them, stood or strutted around with the insufferable air of superiority that made one wish, almost, that the war might have been prolonged until they might be properly humbled." While looking at one especially contemptuous example, he inserted in ink in the margin of the letter: "I confess to an itching desire to 'boot' him."

As a result of his experience with the Germans he wrote with remarkable insight:

I fear that the German people will derive nothing but pride from their exploits in this war. Though defeated they are by no means humiliated. It has required substantially the entire world to defeat them - such will be the flattering unction that they will take to their souls. They will attribute defeat to economic causes, the lack of food and materials, and to internal disorders. They will claim that if the German people had remained true to themselves and united they might still have won the war even though, Bulgaria, Turkey and Austria had fallen away - in other words, that defeat came to them not externally but internally; but in making this contention, they will overlook the fact that their economic distress and other internal dissensions were the results of the successful war waged against them by their enemies. Though their territory remains practically uninvaded, their defeat is none-the-less certain and complete. Their surrender of materials of warfare has made treachery and the renewal of the war impossible. It may be set down as certain that the final treaty of peace will impose penalties upon the German people that will render them the economic slaves of the Allied Governments for many years yet to come.

---

<sup>1</sup>Succeeding quotes on the inspection and training trip are taken from Appendix IX.

General Young expressed gratefulness for the opportunity of making the tour. He states:

We beheld these troops and their German enemies in precisely the same positions that they occupied when the great war sounded its last harsh note. The troops were in their bivouacks and trenches, and machine guns and cannon remained where they had fired their final shots. The command headquarters remained unmoved. ...Indeed, it was as if the battle had just ceased for a moment and all were pausing for its renewal.

A very short time afterwards the front line had completely disappeared. "It will never again be possible to see this scene clothed in the full panoply of war," concluded the General.

Before passing on one should note the artistic appreciation and expression of General Young for the Cathedral of Rheims. He voiced his feelings in these words:

The Cathedral is impressive in its great proportions; its grace and symmetry are harmonious beyond description while its carvings and finer work are exquisitely beautiful. The softened light of the setting sun added an indescribable charm to the scene. There can never be erased from my memory the spectacle of this noble building to which cling so many of the historic memories of France. How superbly this building must have dominated the scene throughout its long history of peace! How still more sublimely do its shattered walls and pinnacles overlook the melancholy ruins and desolate fields that now surround it.

The major part of the Brigade embarked for the States on January 1, 1919. General Young and a contingent had preceded them home by approximately three weeks, evidently with the mission of establishing the machinery for demobilization of the Brigade.<sup>1</sup> The California units received their discharges at the Presidio, California, and the Utah regiment at Logan.

Though the joys of homecoming may have excluded much thought about General Young, his personality, and contributions at that time,

---

<sup>1</sup>Williams, op. cit., 7. Journal History, December 20, 1918, p 3, 4.

the reflection of later years integrated with the recollection of former years has been recorded by various interviews and a questionnaire.<sup>1</sup> The major sentiments of those who contributed to an evaluation of General Young will now be related.

All respondents agreed that the physical appearance of General Young exemplified the attributes of the ideal soldier. Tall, well built and erect posture are some of the descriptive adjectives used. He appeared friendly, and had pleasing facial features. "He gave the appearance of fine leadership and had confident manner without being pompous."<sup>2</sup> One man perhaps thinking of his own weaknesses or those of friends admiringly reports that he possessed all the virtues of a military bearing, and "in spite of rather advanced years, no bulge... at the waist line."<sup>3</sup>

Opinion divided on the oratorical abilities of General Young. Although a few felt that he lacked the natural qualities of a great orator, others reported his addresses as very inspirational. Almost all agreed that he spoke directly, to the point, and understandably. His speeches appeared to be carefully prepared.

A former aide, George D. Keysor, indicated that General Young maintained an Open Door to all his troops.<sup>4</sup> Many of the men came in to see him--in fact so many that Lieutenant Keysor hated to see them bother the General. Richard W. seemed to have time for anyone. Mr.

---

<sup>1</sup>Questionnaires were sent to approximately 110 men who had served under General Young. Approximately forty questionnaires have been returned. They were mailed in late June 1959 and almost all were returned in July.

<sup>2</sup>N. D. Crawford Questionnaire.

<sup>3</sup>A. K. Hegeman Questionnaire.

<sup>4</sup>Interview with George D. Keysor, July 9, 1959.

Keysor's personal reaction to General Young was: "I love him. For an army officer he was as near perfect as any man could be. If he had any faults, I didn't know of them. He spoke briefly and forcibly. He was brilliant, honest to the nth degree, a gentleman, and a very fine officer. In fact, if there was ever a Christian gentleman, he was it."<sup>1</sup>

The fact that the 145th made such an outstanding training record is credited to the inspiration of General Young by one of his former soldiers.<sup>2</sup> Reports another: "He was a leader, not a driver. He avoided sarcasm and threats. He inspired his associates to do their best at all times."<sup>3</sup> The same gentleman continues: "I idolized the man...." Still another says: "I have loved and admired him all my life and regard him as one of the best friends I ever had."<sup>4</sup>

Richard W. impressed his men as a person that had high ideals and deep religious convictions. Through this example and his total personality several report that he had an important influence on their lives. Says a Brigadier General: "General Young influenced my life to the extent that I completed thirty-eight years of service before my retirement..."<sup>5</sup> Another reports that "when in later life I became a business executive, much of my relationship with my subordinates was based upon General Young's attitudes toward us. The result has been a friendly and happy organization for over sixteen years."<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Idem.

<sup>2</sup> N. D. Crawford Questionnaire.

<sup>3</sup> Hegeman Questionnaire.

<sup>4</sup> W. F. Whitney Questionnaire.

<sup>5</sup> A. E. Wilfong Questionnaire.

<sup>6</sup> Hegeman Questionnaire.

The General's former associates appear grateful for the personal interest that he showed them and the concern he evidenced for their welfare. Some examples are these: on one occasion they received extra rations; he never required them to stand at attention longer than necessary; he gave special consideration to one man whose aged father visited him at the Camp; and he arranged for special transportation for his troops to ocean beaches. One appreciative ex-officer reports: "After receiving my commission General and Mrs. Young came by our booth at Grant Hotel. They stopped to congratulate me, both were very gracious and acted as though we were a couple of friends from Salt Lake whom they had run across in a strange city."<sup>1</sup>

The consensus of opinion indicated that people felt at ease in his presence. In fact he habitually requested his subordinates to stand at ease while they were talking with him. Though this relaxed atmosphere seemed to prevail between the General and his men, no one indicated that any of the people of his command attempted to take advantage of the situation. Lieutenant Keysor stated that no one ever did "any funny business around him."<sup>2</sup> When Lieutenant Keysor observed the General administering disciplinary action, he recalled that the "men took it and liked it." The causes for the acceptance were founded primarily on their high regard for his fairness. In typical judicial procedure he thought out each problem carefully. One of his evaluators says: "he obtained and created discipline through loyalty and leadership rather than thru fear. His regiment had very little history of court martials, summary trials..."<sup>3</sup> On one occasion some of the officers went

<sup>1</sup>J. W. Palmer Questionnaire.

<sup>2</sup>Interview with George D. Keysor July 9, 1959.

<sup>3</sup>Hegeman Questionnaire.

to Bordeaux and came back overly saturated for proper military department. The General sent Lieutenant Keysor to request their presence at his office. Although Lieutenant Keysor did not hear what their Commander spoke to them, he emphasized that "they were good boys thereafter. That man could say a lot in a very few words."<sup>1</sup>

General Young impressed his men with a sense of mission. He then directed and coordinated his work through daily staff meetings. Those that had contact with Richard W. in a closer relationship reported that his orders seemed reasonable and were clearly stated. No one felt that he missed the big picture by overemphasis on unimportant details. He welcomed the ideas of subordinates, and used them liberally if he felt the ideas had merit.<sup>2</sup> As a general rule Richard W. outlined the objectives and the desired results, and left his subordinates to determine the techniques of getting the job accomplished. General Young carefully weighed matters, appeared to have no major impediments in making decisions, and possessed the strength of character requisite to follow it through.<sup>3</sup> If his subordinates made mistakes, he calmly and in private pointed out their errors. After being shown a better solution, Richard W. gave them another chance. But repeated errors "usually resulted in a change" of duties."<sup>4</sup>

No questionnaire hinted that the General had been religiously intolerant. One non-Mormon turned out to be one of his most enthusiastic supporters (as judged by the questionnaire). He reports:

<sup>1</sup> Interview with George D. Keysor July 9, 1959.

<sup>2</sup> Idem.

<sup>3</sup> Idem.

<sup>4</sup> Hegeman Questionnaire.



Although I was not an L.D.S. member and had no common social acquaintances with him, he, as the result of a competitive exam, jumped me from a PFC (Private First Class) to 2nd Lt. in spite of reluctance on the part of his staff.<sup>1</sup>

Ex-Lieutenant Keysor says that to the best of his recollection General Young had no Mormons on his personal staff for the major part of his World War I experience. Yet with non-Mormon Keysor he discussed his religious views freely. One of the frequent topics of conversation involved Richard W.'s speculation of various welfare or relief techniques for church members. He hoped that he might have some part in establishing some type of organization for such activities after his return.

The only important worry that Richard W. manifested to Mr. Keysor centered in the apprehension that he might lose his job. The implication being that this would result from his own command ineffectiveness.<sup>2</sup> No one else seemed to be aware of this feeling, as judged by the questionnaire. All indicated General Young demonstrated the highest qualities of self possession and confidence. Mr. Keysor and others recalled that in all his associations with officers of higher rank, he retained the same basic personality--no servility or politicking. He conducted his business with these higher officials in a quiet and business-like manner.

In evaluation it appears that Utah's 145th Field Artillery regiment made an excellent record in training, both in the United States and in France. Though the regiment had not been in combat, every impression indicated their performance in war would have equalled or

---

<sup>1</sup> Idem.

<sup>2</sup> Keysor interview. Richard W. had been away from the army for eighteen years. Bridging such a large gap of information and experience would be a difficult task for most men to accomplish.

surpassed the laurels of their preparatory training. Along with the noteworthy contributions of the civilian populace,<sup>1</sup> the stature of "Utah the Despised"<sup>2</sup> had been elevated to a new and higher plateau of public recognition and approval. "Never again," said the new President of the Mormon Church, Heber J. Grant, "can it be said that we are not a loyal, patriotic people."<sup>3</sup>

Recognition of the type just described is not conferred or bought--it is won. It is won by people, individually first and collectively second. In the forefront of those participants shines the name of one who left a Colonel and returned a Brigadier General. Having left a hero personality, Richard returned even more so. He had been an inspiration and strong positive influence on the men who served under him. Along with these men he had won new recognitions for his home State. He was proud of his State. The State was proud of him.<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Noble Warrum, Utah in the World War (Salt Lake City, 1924) 34. In each national bond drive they over subscribed their quotas. They repeated this record in their support of the Red Cross.

<sup>2</sup>Supra, 85.

<sup>3</sup>Journal History, January 5, 1919.

<sup>4</sup>Newspapers published in Salt Lake City and vicinity, June 26, 1917 to April 1, 1919.

**CHAPTER VIII**  
**THE LAST YEAR (1919)**

## CHAPTER VIII

### THE LAST YEAR

General Young was discharged from the service in March 12, 1919. Since his son Richard W. Jr. had maintained the family law firm during his father's absence, Richard W. Sr. simply discarded the uniform for civilian clothes and resumed his pre-war practice. Not all things were the same, however. The name of Richard W. Young had been bannered in the press almost weekly for nearly two years. What could be more logical than his consideration as the next candidate for governor? At the insistence of many of the State's leading citizens, Richard W. finally acceded to their demands by indicating that he would accept the nomination if offered him. In anticipation of that event, and with the assistance and advice of his confidant, Richard W. Jr., potential governor Young began a systematic yet quiet investigation and study of Utah's major problems.<sup>1</sup>

Richard W. continued his oft stated role of speech maker. The audiences consisted of the same groups essentially, Church and civic. In March he related for a Tabernacle audience the account of "Utah Men in the World War."<sup>2</sup> Later in October he talked at the General Semi-Annual

---

<sup>1</sup>Interview with Richard W. Young Jr. June 5, 1959. Mr. Young believes there would have been no question about his selection had his father lived.

<sup>2</sup>Journal History of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, March 23, 1919, p 2. Contains daily and miscellaneous records, and news-clips of interest to the Church. Compiled by the Church Historian's Office., Salt Lake City. Hereafter called Journal History.

Conference of the Mormon Church. Initially he spoke of his love for his fellow church-members: "There is no experience that touches my heart more fully than the sight of the face of a good old brother or sister I have known, and know to be faithful, for many years. I share their joys and their sorrows. I deeply love the saints and their association, and am proud of being a member of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints."<sup>1</sup> He then touched on two historic issues: Education and Loyalty to the country. The Mormon Church has always stressed education, said Richard. Part of that education included the belief that the "Constitution of the United States was written as it were by the very finger of God. Surely that belief is an inspiration to the highest patriotism."<sup>2</sup>

Ex-General Young then ranged out into the subject of the League of Nations. He made an urgent plea for the adoption of the League, arguing that such a force was necessary to restrain lawless nations. Forcing the issue against persons who argue that the United States will lose its sovereignty by League involvement, he says:

Gentlemen talk about our yielding up some of the sovereignty of the United States. I do not think that the objection is sound or well taken. But if so, then let us yield up so much of our sovereignty as may be necessary to the realization of a world peace. I yield up some of my sovereignty to the city government, to the police, under ordinances and laws that prevent me from treading on the toes of my neighbor, from taking his property, or intruding in his home. To that extent I yield up my sovereignty. The law says that I may not infringe upon the rights of my neighbor. There is a league, there is a treaty between you and me, and between all the citizens of every law abiding country, under which each of

---

<sup>1</sup>Conference Reports, October 19, 1919, 148. Contains full accounts of the speeches and activities of the Semi-Annual Conferences of the Mormon Church, Church Historian's Office.

<sup>2</sup>Ibid., 148-49.

us gives up some of his God-given sovereignty in order to preserve the weak from being overpowered by the strong. It is so in the government of the United States--the states are protected against foreign invasions. Nobody can violate the sovereignty of this state or any state in the Union but what the United States will come to its aid, so, in our municipal and state relations we are shielded by a sort of Article ten from outside interference. Why should not that principle be extended to the nations, so that when big nations see fit to rob one of the little nations of its territory or its liberties, there should be a world policeman who shall say, "Thus far shalt thou go and no further?" Shall we return to that unhappy, irrational, and unchristian condition where there was no restraint upon any nation, where force prevailed and might made right?<sup>1</sup>

In early 1919 Colonel Theodore Roosevelt Jr. and Colonel Bennett Champ Clark, the organizers of the American Legion in the United States, contacted Richard W. and asked him to sponsor an American Legion organization in Utah. Richard accepted the invitation, and soon thereafter had organized a local post.<sup>2</sup>

After his return Father Young shocked his family by occasional references to a new war.<sup>3</sup> Besides being aggressors some German officers remained haughty-unrepentant. Speaking of the harsh treatment the Germans received from the Allies in the Versailles Treaty he says:

Germany has not property enough, has not resources enough, nor the possibility of earning money enough, to compensate, nor indeed is there any possibility after suffering enough in any respect to equal the wrongs that she has done in this great war. The terms that have been imposed upon her as a matter of fact are the very minimum of what could in justice have been imposed upon her.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Ibid., 150-51. Richard W. Jr. indicates that his father made a close study of the Peace Treaty and League provisions as presented to the Senate. He felt some of the objections of the Senate were justified.

<sup>2</sup>Colonel Hamilton Gardner, Utah Territorial Militia, Unpublished Manuscript, Utah Historical Society, 674.

<sup>3</sup>Interview with Dr. Clark Young, July 29, 1959.

<sup>4</sup>Conference Reports, 151.

The whole feeling of Richard against the Germans seemed to be based essentially on his tremendous respect for the law. There is no indication that he harbored any long-standing ill-will against the German people. But this did not diminish his intense concern over their aggressions. Though a Democrat he became upset with President Wilson's 1916 campaign. When the President campaigned that he had maintained the peace, Richard W. complained that we were not in the war punishing the aggressors. As a result of this impatience he bolted the party lines in the 1916 election and voted for his old law school classmate, Charles Evans Hughes.<sup>1</sup>

Students of the life and philosophy of Richard W. Young have further reason to rejoice in his assignment of addressing the graduates at the Commencement exercises at the University of Utah, June 6, 1919.<sup>2</sup> In this address is found some of the clearest and most succinctly defined views of General Young on freedom, law, and government. After recounting some of the history struggles of man to achieve a measure of freedom, and after pointing out that in the American system mankind has been blessed with a greater amount of that commodity than at any previous time in history, speaker Young sends out a clarion warning against the social revolutionists, anarchists and thoughtless persons that would destroy or sabotage the Constitution of the United States on the ground of its incapacity to meet the demands of the 20th Century world.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Interview with Richard W. Young Jr. May 22, 1959.

<sup>2</sup> Richard W. Young, "Is the Constitution of the United States obsolete?" Bulletin of the University of Utah. Vol. 10 (July 1920), No. 10, Part 2.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid., 5-10

Questions General Young:

Is it not beyond dispute that the letter of the Constitution and the spirit that has given it life have wrought the most wonderful material and beneficent results in the whole history of government? Prosperity, freedom from militarism, order, and liberty, contentment and happiness are the legitimate and unquestioned offspring of our constitutional system.<sup>1</sup>

How foolish then it would be to neglect our knowledge of responsibilities to the Constitution. The remainder of the speech is a summary of some of the more important principles and characteristics of the Constitution and the government which it establishes.

In the American system, says General Young, one finds the proper balance of the prerogatives of the majority versus the guaranteed rights of the minorities.<sup>2</sup> He warns that "liberty is dependent to a greater extent upon what it denies to government than what it concedes."<sup>3</sup> Pointing to the tragic fate of Russia he exclaimed: "What crimes have been committed in thy name, O, Liberty! Russia has merely exchanged one despotism for another."<sup>4</sup>

As a teacher instructing his students he states:

Is it not, therefore, clear that freedom and constitutional government go hand in hand, that liberty without a constitution is impracticable--indeed, unthinkable? Is it not obvious that such a charter is essential both in order to provide the machinery of government, and to provide a shield for the protection of individual right from denial or encroachment?<sup>5</sup>

The distinctive features of the American government rest on five cornerstones says the speaker:<sup>6</sup>

FIRST: The Federal System.

SECOND: Government by representatives;

THIRD: The distribution of governmental powers into legislative, executive and judicial departments.

---

<sup>1</sup> Ibid., 18

<sup>2</sup> Ibid., 14

<sup>3</sup> Ibid., 11

<sup>5</sup> Ibid., 12-13

<sup>6</sup> Ibid., 13



FOURTH: The guaranty of personal rights and immunities; and

FIFTH: The judicial protection of constitutional guarantees.

General Young then proceeds to evaluate each of the cornerstones against the central theme of his talk, i.e., can this Constitution meet the challenge of modern society?

The Federal System, although charged with many deficiencies, should be weighed carefully against its proven advantages. In state's and local rights the people find their greatest safeguard of individual liberty, asserts the speaker.<sup>1</sup>

By the division of powers in the Government, General Young maintained the people are protected against "decisions of the moment." Further, that the powers entrusted to the courts are sacred. The diminution of their powers would have disastrous effects. He warns: "If the courts are not vested with authority to declare acts of Congress unconstitutional, then will there be no check--absolutely no check--on the despotism of the majority."<sup>2</sup> Due process of law is one of the most significant features of the Constitution.

As Richard W. discusses the amendatory processes of the Constitution, he points out the number of important changes that have been made. Is not this feature when coupled with basic machinery of the government enough to meet the challenge of the changing world? Looking at recent years he pointed to the entry of the government into necessary fields of economic and social activity. There was no reason to assume that future challenges could not be met.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Ibid., 14

<sup>2</sup> Ibid., 16

<sup>3</sup> Ibid., 19-20

Half apologizing, Richard W. Young says: "My address has been long, doubtless wearisome. In justification I plead the vital and immediate importance of the theme and the impossibility of discussing it either with brevity or with a light and airy touch."<sup>1</sup>

In bringing the subject down to immediate and personal application, he cautions:

The Constitution, be it remembered, can rise [no] higher in beneficence than the people rise in righteousness, and, despite the beauty and excellence of its form, it will become an instrument of corruption and disorder, if the people permit, legislatures enact, and courts sustain foolish and corrupt laws. Righteousness, and righteousness alone, with all the words implies in the way of justice, the "square deal," liberty, equality and fraternity, will exalt a nation.<sup>2</sup>

In the missionary spirit he exhorts:

Go ye forth, my dear young friends, in the strength of your youth, consecrated to the exalted purpose and infused with the firm resolve to defend our sacred Constitution against every assault that may be aimed at its destruction or its mutilation.<sup>3</sup>

Then in a last and final reminder, Richard W. in characteristic fashion recites the following:

O freedom! thou art not, as poets dream,  
A fair young girl with light and delicate limbs,  
And wavy tresses--A bearded man,  
Arm'd to the teeth, art thou; one mailed hand  
Grasps the broad shield, and one the sword; thy brow,  
Glorious in beauty though it be, is scarr'd  
With token of old wars' thy massive limbs  
Are strong with struggling--Oh! not yet,  
Mayst thou unbrace thy corselet nor lay by  
Thy sword; nor yet, O Freedom! close thy lids  
In slumber; for thine enemy never sleeps,  
And thou must watch and combat till the day  
Of the new earth and heaven.<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Ibid., 21

<sup>2</sup>Idem.

<sup>3</sup>Ibid., 22

<sup>4</sup>Ibid., 23

The tempo of the Young home accelerated in joyful anticipation of the coming Christmas season. It would be the first Christmas in two years that the family would be able to spend together. December 19th began with no distinction. Richard W. was scheduled to address the local Alumni of Columbia University the following evening. Suddenly during the day he became violently ill. On the 21st an appendectomy was performed. Pending his return to normal activities, he asked Richard W. Jr. to be sure to write his little friend Arthur Ocheltree of Riverside, California, and thank him for his very thoughtful Christmas present.<sup>1</sup> During most of this time he suffered greatly from pain. On the 27th of December while under intense pain he again mentioned Arthur Ocheltree, and told Richard W. Jr. what a fine boy Arthur was. A few hours later Richard watched his father turn slightly and softly but forcibly recite:

Now is the winter of our discontent  
Made glorious summer by this sun of York.<sup>2</sup>

This Shakespearean quotation faded away into silence--Richard W. Young was dead.

---

<sup>1</sup>Supra, 153-54

<sup>2</sup>William Shakespeare, "Richard III" Act I, Scene I.

**CHAPTER IX**  
**EVALUATION AND ANALYSIS**

CHAPTER IX  
SUMMARY AND EVALUATION

The news of General Young's death shocked the State and Nation. News of his demise was noted by the New York Times, was carried in blazing headlines in local papers, and received attention in the California papers.<sup>1</sup> The Salt Lake Tribune calls his death a national loss.<sup>2</sup> Some indication of the prominence of General Young can be derived from the size of his funeral. Not only was the Tabernacle filled with an estimated ten thousand people, but several thousand other persons lined the streets along the road to the cemetery.<sup>3</sup> The funeral integrated elements of both military and normal civilian services. Eloquent and touching speeches attested to the love of his friends and comrades.<sup>4</sup> President Heber J. Grant exclaimed that he deserved to be sitting among the mourners, rather than attempting to eulogize his life-long friend. To love best those whom we know best is the finest tribute that we can give to any man. Such a man, says Heber J. Grant, was Richard W.<sup>5</sup> Later one of his best friends, B. H. Roberts, relates: "How varied and wide were life's experiences for him! How many streams were conjoined to form his life's river! How many sided that life--how rich. What capacity

---

<sup>1</sup>New York Times, December 28, 1919. Deseret News, Salt Lake Tribune, Salt Lake Herald, from December 28, 1919 to January 2, 1920.

<sup>2</sup>Salt Lake Tribune as quoted by Noble Warrum. Utah in World War, (Salt Lake City, 1924) 54.

<sup>3</sup>Deseret News, January 1, 1920.

<sup>4</sup>"Richard W. Young," In Memoriam (Salt Lake City, 1920), 18.

<sup>5</sup>Ibid., 19.

for service was garnered up in Richard W. Young!"<sup>1</sup> Colonel Hamilton Gardner sums up the feeling of many in a manuscript dedication to Richard W.:

TO

Brigadier General Richard W. Young

West Pointer, Army Officer, Lawyer, Christian Gentleman

Religion remained one of the chief cornerstones of Richard's life. Not only did he study it, love it, write about it, but he also lived it. This life of religious living was characterized by modesty, quietness, and faithfulness. A fanatical spirit or intolerant attitude were foreign to his nature. Truth and honor were axiomatic principles of his life.

Throughout all of his life actions and thoughts were centered in a high idealism. He appreciated the value of historical tradition, and frequently called listener's attention to their debt of gratitude to cultural and religious forebears. To Richard W. courageous living was tantamount to successful living. But courage of the highest type found expression not in physical deeds of bravery, fine as they were, but in the inner strength which sustains man in the ideological and social front.

Though life is essentially a battle, thought Richard W. Young, that fact did not detract from its value, enjoyment, or rewards: "If heaven is as good as this life, I'll be satisfied," he told his daughter.<sup>2</sup>

Richard W. demonstrated a balance of idealism with practicality in his philosophy and actions. He told his son, Richard Jr.: "Now look here son, you will come across many things in life that you do not under-

---

<sup>1</sup>B. H. Roberts, "An Appreciation," Improvement Era, 23 (1920) 321-2.

<sup>2</sup>Interview with Mary Young Burton, June 16, 1959.

stand. Examine them carefully. If after your examination you still do not understand them, don't discard them but put them upon a shelf. Then after a while take them down and re-evaluate them. There may be things that we will never be able to understand completely."<sup>1</sup> In the Smoot hearing it is of interest that he said he "did not think that religion ought to rest entirely in the clouds."<sup>2</sup>

If examined in part, the life of Richard W. might manifest an inordinate amount of ambition to the reader. Yet in the overall perspective his ambition had definite limitations as to direction and breath. He relentlessly pursued the rank of major during the Spanish American War and Philippine-Insurrection. Except in the legal field he sought no major political offices within the State. Recognitions received were generally unsolicited.

He encouraged and practiced tolerance for the mistakes for others and exhorted himself and others to diligent efforts in eradicating their own failings. Besides having a keen sense of humor, Dick Young built his life on self-analysis and self-projection into the future.

One of the deepest and most often repeated qualities is found in his reverential attitude toward law. He acknowledged natural law as the handiwork of God. True laws made by man had an undisputed sanctity also. Throughout his life he held to the belief that the Constitution was divinely inspired. Drawing perhaps from his legal training, family, friends and professional associates all emphasized Richard W.'s fairness in dealing with his fellow men.

Education continued an integral part of his own life. There was no such thing as putting the books away on graduation. Things of worth

---

<sup>1</sup> Interview with Richard W. Young Jr., May 22, 1959.

<sup>2</sup> Reed Smoot Proceedings U. S. 59th Congr., 1st Sess., Senate Document 486 (1905), 111, 136.

to be learned were the treasures of knowledge of the great poets and philosophers. Not only did he read widely, but he encouraged his children to read.

Having a deep regard for the dignity of mankind, there emanated from him a significant spirit of love. Children especially were objects of his admiration and love. Of course, he deeply revered his own. He played games with them, read to them, took them on summer vacations and to athletic events. But he also disciplined them in ways calculated to impress lessons on their minds. He revered his wife, and went to special pains to look after her welfare.

Richard W. Young was devoted to his old educational institutions, West Point and Columbia Law College. The friendships he maintained there in many cases were renewed and refreshed by visits of his classmates in his home. He maintained the military virtues of promptness and preparedness throughout his life, though it is quite doubtful that these qualities were all learned at West Point. Richard W. rose in prominence in his work in the International Irrigation Congresses, becoming their president from 1912 to 1914.

One of the most interesting capabilities of General Young included that of influencing people. His speech to the men of the 145th has some of the typical features of many of his leadership techniques.<sup>1</sup> Summarized these are:

1. Setting the example himself, in word and action.
  2. The recognition of the identity, importance, and contribution of each person individually, and the group collectively.
  3. Establishing a common bond of interest between his audience and himself.
-



4. Spelling out what their general mission is and relating it to a high ideal.
5. Pointing out their historical traditions and admonishing them to continue on in the same paths.

In a broader evaluation of Richard Young's influence on others it is soon discovered that he impressed people as a man of ability and as one who got results. This reputation restrained the smart aleck and undoubtedly goaded the lazy. Contemporaries felt that Richard W. Young took a genuine and personal interest in their welfare. He consistently accentuated the individuality of those he met, and through expressions of faith and confidence in their ability and potentialities elevated them to higher plateaus of self confidence, self appreciation, and job accomplishments. While concentrating on personnel relations and the major problems of his military responsibilities, he delegated detailed work among subordinates and then loyally supported them in the performance of their missions. His success as a commander and administrator on the one hand and his Open Door policy to the men of his command on the other could hardly have been accomplished otherwise.

General Young's love of people evidenced itself in many acts of kindness, charity, and tolerance. People felt at ease in his presence--there was no sense of competition of personalities. He consistently and carefully planned for the future, but lived fully, joyfully, and effectively in the present. The amalgamation of all of these characteristics and attributes with those previously discussed gave associates and military subordinates a sense of physical and emotional security; it set boundaries, direction and purpose of action; and it motivated conscientious and ambitious--for in General Young they knew their efforts would receive a fair and just recognition and approbation or correction.

Richard W. Young rapidly grasped the essentials of problems. Independence of thought on his part brought forth many worthwhile suggestions and actions. Because of the freshness of viewpoint he inspired and attracted those who knew him. He is credited with the original suggestion which led to the erection of the Bureau of Information at the Salt Lake Temple Block.<sup>1</sup> He proposed that the Church operate their own ship between Europe and America.<sup>2</sup> He also thought a great deal about, and perhaps suggested to his friend Heber J. Grant, a relief or welfare project for the Mormon Church. One appraiser of Richard W. said he could see an opportunity a mile away.<sup>3</sup>

The future General Young was born into a highly unpopular and minority religion. For a half century the government generally excluded his fellow members from public office and trust. Richard himself had been the target of several attacks, because of his religious affiliation or views. Today one of the apostles of that religion is the Secretary of Agriculture.<sup>4</sup> What brought about this transformation? The gradual disintegration of prejudicial barriers has been accomplished in a significant way by closer and more frequent contacts of non-Mormons with Mormons. Among those who through personal association and reputation brought Mormonism into a more favorable climate

---

<sup>1</sup>Roberts, op. cit., 322.

<sup>2</sup>Journal History of Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, October 12, 1883, p 2. Contains daily and miscellaneous records and newsclips of interest to the Church. Compiled by the Church Historian's Office, Salt Lake City.

<sup>3</sup>John Henry Evans, "Some Men Who Have Done Things," Improvement Era, 13 (1910), 739.

<sup>4</sup>Ezra Taft Benson.

few stand higher or more prominently than Richard W. Young. In this respect his life represents a major contribution to his nation and to his religion; and yet this contribution primarily resulted as a by-product of the man himself and his performance in appointed duties. In war and peace he had rendered outstanding service to his country, state and religion. Lastly he and his wife had raised a large and distinguished family.

Though now dead almost forty years Richard W. Young lives on enshrined in the memories of a devoted family and a wide circle of friends and junior associates. Beyond their life span his fame and reputation will continue to live through his own writings and through the numerous documentary accounts of his actions and life. The life of "the most complete man I ever knew"<sup>1</sup> seems appropriately summarized by George H. Brimhall, who wrote:

A home has lost its center,  
The Church one to commend,  
The State has lost a leader,  
And humanity a friend.

In multitudes we wonder  
And ask with hearts that bleed  
Why he should be called yonder  
In this our hour of need.

We mourn but without murmur,  
It comforts us to know,  
Time's breeze shall float his banner  
And make his campfires glow.

The memory of a hero,  
Is more to earth for aye,  
Than the presence of a million,  
Who pass great struggles by.

The thoughts of him shall lift us  
A rising sun to face,  
Thank God we knew and loved him  
Near-model of the race.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Dr. Adam S. Bennion, late Apostle of the Mormon Church, as quoted by his wife, Minerva Young Bennion in interview June 9, 1959.

<sup>2</sup>George H. Brimhall, "Tribute to General Richard W. Young," White and Blue, XXIII (1920), No. 15, 321.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

## A. PRIMARY SOURCES

## 1. HISTORICAL DATA FROM THE CHURCH OF JESUS CHRIST OF LATTER-DAY SAINTS, SALT LAKE CITY.

Genealogical Records

Family Group Sheet of Brigham Young and Mary Ann Angell.  
Marriage card file from Genealogical Library.

Journal History of the Church.

(This is a compilation of transcripts, excerpts, newsclips, letters, talks, diaries, minutes of meetings, etc., from 1830 to present. Compiled in scrapbook form. It has an excellent index. Church Historian's Office).

Ninetieth Semi-Annual Conference of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. Salt Lake City, October 35, 1919.  
(called Conference Reports when bound. Church Historian's Office).

## 2. GOVERNMENTAL, STATE, AND MUNICIPAL DOCUMENTS

Minister of Interior. Department of Interior Irrigation Branch.  
Official Proceedings of the 21st International Irrigation Congress...Calgary, Alberta, October 5-9, 1914. Ottawa, 1915.

The Municipal Government of Salt Lake City. Salt Lake City, 1891.  
(Pocket size book containing names of City Officers, **Standing Committees**, and rules of the City Council.)

Utah. The Revised Statutes of the State of Utah. Revised and annotated by Richard W. Young, Grant H. Smith, and William A. Lee. Lincoln, 1897. (Revised Statutes became effective January 1, 1898.)

U. S. Senate. Committee on Privileges and Elections. Protests against the Right Honorable Reed Smoot...to Hold His Seat. 59th Congr., 1st Sess., S. 486. Washington, 1906. 4 vols.

## 3. OFFICIAL CORRESPONDENCE AND ORDERS

Microfilm Records of Richard W. Young.  
(General Services Administration, National Archives and Record Services, Washington D. C.)

Oath of Office, Additional Second Lieutenant, 3rd Artillery.  
July 19, 1882.

Oath of Office, Second Lieutenant, 5th Artillery. July 25, 1882.

Second Lieutenant Richard W. Young to Assistant Adjutant General,  
Division of Atlantic, U. S. Army. (Unless otherwise stated the  
"Adjutant General" is the Adjutant General of the Army, Washington  
D. C.). July 13, 1884.

Jeff Chandler to Secretary of War. January 2, 1886.

Major Asa Bird Gardner to Secretary of War. January 6, 1886.

Richard W. Young to the President of United States (Through  
the Secretary of War). January 17, 1886.

Theodore W. Dwight to Secretary of War. January 18, 1886.

Major George W. McKee to Secretary of War. January 20, 1886.

Major General John M. Schofield to Adjutant General. July 15,  
1886.

Adjutant General to Major General John M. Schofield. July 20,  
1886.

Acting Adjutant General to Commanding Officer, Fort Douglas, Utah.  
October 17, 1888.

Adjutant General to Honorable J. L. Rawlins. April 28, 1898.

William A. Lee to Assistant Secretary of War. May 5, 1898.

Richard W. Young to Major General Wesley Merritt. May 29, 1898.

Major D. H. Kingie to Major General Wesley Merritt. May 31, 1898.

Muster Roll, Battery A, Utah Volunteers. June 1-30, 1893.

Major General E. S. Otis to Adjutant General, Endorsement of  
Basic Letter, Captain Richard W. Young to Major General Wesley  
Merritt. June 3, 1893.

Major General Wesley Merritt to Adjutant General. June 3, 1898.

Adjutant General to Major General Wesley Merritt. June 3, 1898.

Governor Heber M. Wells to Adjutant General. June 4, 1898.

Captain Richard W. Young to Colonel Thomas Ward, Assistant  
Adjutant General. June 5, 1898.

Assistant Adjutant General to Captain Richard W. Young. June  
7, 1898.

Major-General Arthur MacArthur to Adjutant General (Philippines). August 22, 1898.

Captain Richard W. Young to Major W. A. Simpson. (Filed with the Adjutant General, November 2, 1898.) August 31, 1898.

Governor Heber M. Wells to Secretary of War. November 11, 1898.

Governor Heber M. Wells to Adjutant General. November 23, 1898.

Adjutant General to Governor Heber M. Wells. November 26, 1898.

#### Non-Microfilm Documents.

War Department to Richard W. Young. March 26, 1878.

Special Orders 236, Headquarters, Department of the East, U. S. Army. November 15, 1884.

Special Orders 50, Headquarters of the Army, Washington D. C. March 3, 1885.

Special Orders 120, Headquarters, Department of the Platte, Omaha. December 19, 1887.

General Orders 17, National Guard, Madison, Wisconsin. June 30, 1888.

Special Orders 1, Utah National Guard. March 23, 1895.

Secretary of State (of Utah) to Richard W. Young. April 25, 1896.

Governor Heber M. Wells to Richard W. Young. (Filed in Utah State Historical Society. The Governor's files from May 1898 to August 1899 contain miscellaneous correspondence from Richard W. Young. The same files from 1900 to 1916 include numerous references of appointments given to Richard W. Young as a State representative to various Irrigation and commercial conferences.) December 26, 1896.

Adjutant General [Washington, D.C.] to Richard W. Young. February 18, 1902.

#### 4. ORIGINAL JOURNALS AND SCRAP BOOKS

Minerva Richards Young Journal. Contains summaries and scattered entries from September 5, 1882 to June 15, 1883. It summarizes from June 16, 1883 until March 3, 1886 and follows with intermittent daily entries thereafter until June 28, 1886. Richard W. Young Family Papers, Salt Lake City.

Richard W. Young Journal. Contains a brief biographical sketch of his parents and grand-parents, and intermittent entries from August 13, 1877 to May 15, 1878. Richard W. Young Family Papers, Salt Lake City.

Richard W. Young Scrap Books. Three partially filled scrap books. The first is most valuable, containing personal papers, certificates, letters, orders, and other miscellaneous documents from 1875 to 1902. The other scrap books are primarily newspaper clip files of the Spanish American War and World War I respectively.

## 5. PERSONAL CORRESPONDENCE

Correspondence to Richard W. Young from:

Heber M. Wells. February 10, March 4, 1876, December 18, 1877.  
(See Appendix II).

President John R. Park. November 18, 1876.

President John Taylor. June 27, 1884. (See Appendix III).

Lieutenant L. D. Green. February 6, 1888.

Commander E. W. Mullen. September 28, 1888.

General E. S. Otis. November 5, 1901. (Including extracts of letter from General E. S. Otis to Adjutant General).

General E. S. Otis. December 17, 1906.

Mrs. Cora B. Ocheltree. June 17, 1918.

Correspondence from Richard W. Young to:

Minerva Richards. June 8, 1880.

Commandant of Cadets. June 20, 1881. (West Point, New York).

Editor of Harpers Weekly. January 29, 1882. (Incomplete letter draft. It is not known if a completed letter was sent).

Apostle Wilford Woodruff and Brethren of the Twelve. October 2, 1888  
(Church Historian's Office).

Governor Heber M. Wells. December 31, 1898. (Utah State Historical Society).

Governor Heber M. Wells. January 23, 1900.

Mary Young. August 2, 1918.

Minerva Richards Young and Family. August 30, 1918.

Minerva Richards Young and Family. September 12, 1918.

Mary Young. October 30, 1918.

Richard W. Young Family. November 21, 1918.



## Miscellaneous Correspondence.

Heber J. Grant to Minerva Richards Young, December 28, 1919, January 6, 1920. (Heber J. Grant maintained periodic correspondence with Minerva Richards Young until his death in 1945).

Girard B. Rosenblatt to Executive Secretary, Alumni Federation, Columbia University, January 2, 1920.

John A. Widtsoe to Minerva Richards Young, April 10, 1920.

Clark Young to Richard W. Young Family, April 19, 1945.

Connie Young Dorton to Richard W. Young Family, April 19, 1945. (Approximately.)

Truman R. Young to Louis P. Murray, June 16, 1959.

Richard W. Young Jr. to Louis P. Murray, August 5, 1959.

## 6. PUBLISHED WORKS OF RICHARD W. YOUNG

The Contributor. Representing the Young Mens and Young Ladies' Mutual Improvement Association of the Latter-day Saints Church. Vols. I-XVII. 1879-1896. (The Contributor has a substantial number of articles about Richard W. Young also. All the references below are from The Contributor.)

"Composition of the United States Army." V, 44.

"Refused Admittance to Bar." VIII, 154.

"In the Wake of the Church." IV, Consisting of "The Hill Cumorah," p 17; "Kirtland," p 105; "Nauvoo," p 148; "Carthage Jail," 305; "Independence." p 460.

"A Second Daniel." II, 211.

"Faith Promoting Series." III, 76.

"Territorial Governments." VII, 211.

"Majority." VII, 48.

"Mohammed and His Religion." I, 102.

"Morals and Dress." VII, 274.

"The Eternal Strength of Mormonism." I, 153.

"Mormons Educationally." I, 40.

"The Nauvoo Legion." IX, 1, 41, 121, 161, 201, 241.

"Up Broadway in New York." VII, 410.

"Trip on the Great Salt Lake." VIII, 453.

"The Story of Pat Lynch's Dream." VIII, 155.

"History and Government of the United States." X, 336.

"Church and State in Utah." VII, 7.

"Mormonite War." XI, 281, 348, 369, 428, 266.

"Development of War Machines." V, 417.

"Cadet Whittaker at West Point." VII, 184.

"Witchcraft." VI, 452.

"Growth of Y.M.C.A." VII, 455.

"General Orders No. 58," Office of U. S. Military Governor in the Philippines Manila, April 23, 1900.

Improvement Era. Magazine of the Young Men's Mutual Improvement Association of the Latter-day Saints, Vols. I-XXII, 1897-1919. (All the references below are from the Improvement Era.)

"Escalante's Trip in Utah." V, 612.

"A Vivid View of France and the War." XXII, 506.

"Jesus and Joseph Smith Compared." III, 721.

"Philippine Crime." II, 481.

"Point of View." Poem. III, 918.

"Scientists Are Not Always Correct." XVI, 460.

"The Mission and Teachings of Joseph Smith." VIII, 333.

"A Splendid University." IX, 359.

"Utah's Part in Manila's Capture." II, 161.

Legal and Tactical Considerations Affecting The Employment of The Military in the Suppression of Mobs. New York, 1888.

"Bless Your Enemies," Liahona. The Elders Journal, Official Organ of the Missions of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. XIII, 768.

"The Filipina Woman," Young Woman's Journal, Young Ladies' Improvement Association. XII, 340.

## 7. NEWSPAPERS AND PERIODICALS

American Bar Association Journal, February, 1930, p 93.

Blount, James H.

"Some Legal Aspects of the Philippines," The American Lawyer, November 1, 1906, p 495.

"Brigham Young University Loses a Staunch Friend in General Young," White and Blue, XXIII No. 15, 321.

Brimhall, George H.

"Tribute to General Richard W. Young," Poem, White and Blue, XXIII, No. 15, 321.

Evans, John Henry

"Some Men Who Have Done Things," Improvement Era, XIII, 739.

Harpers Weekly, XXVI, January 14, 1882.

"Hazing at West Point," Letter to the Editor of the Sun [New York] from a Cadet. Authorship credited to Cadet John H. Beacom by Richard W. Young. (Approximate date, 1881.)

Improvement Era, XXI, 1074-1076. (Refers to Richard W. Young's assignment to an Efficiency Board at Fort Sill, Oklahoma, and his visit to Salt Lake City while in transit to Fort Sill.)

"A Judicial Outrage," Contributor, VIII, 154.

Lobinger, Charles Sumner

"A Decade of Judicial Fusion in the Philippines," Case and Comment, XVII, No. 5, 215-17.

#### Newspapers

Deseret News, weekly, 1850-1898; semi-weekly, 1865-1922; daily, 1867-1920, Salt Lake City.

Logan Journal, weekly, 1879-1882; semi-weekly 1883-1897; tri-weekly, 1897-1916; daily, 1916-1928.

Los Angeles Examiner, December 28, 1919.

New York Times, December 28, 1919.

New York Tribune, March 30, 1884, June 2, 1884.

Salt Lake Herald, daily, 1870-1920, as Herald-Republican, 1909-1918; semi-weekly 1870-1916; as Herald Republican; weekly, 1880-1916, as the Herald.

Roberts, B.H.

"An Appreciation," Improvement Era, XXIII, 321-26.

Tracy, James F.

"Law in the Philippines," Paper Presented at the Thirty-third Annual Meeting of the New York State Bar Association Rochester January 20-21, 1910. (Special Reprint of Address.)

"Richard W. Young," Annual Report of Association of Graduates, West Point, 1920, p 106.

## 8. CONTEMPORARY WORKS

Alger, Russel Alexander

The Spanish American War. New York, 1901.

Bancroft, Hubert Howe

History of Utah, San Francisco, 1889.

Birkhimer, William Edward

Military Government and Martial Law, 2d ed. Kansas City, 1904.

Jensen, Andrew

Latter-day Saints Biographical Encyclopedia. 1. Salt Lake City, 1901.

Mabey, Charles R.

The Utah Batteries, A History. Salt Lake City, 1900.

In Memorium. Salt Lake City, 1920. Printed account of the funeral services of Richard W. Young.

Prentiss, A., Editor

History of the Utah Volunteers. Salt Lake City, 1900.

Tullidge, Edward W.

The History of Salt Lake City. Salt Lake City, 1904.

War Department

Annual Reports of the War Department for the Fiscal Year Ending June 30, 1899. Report of the Major-General Commanding the Army. Part II, III. Washington, 1900. (Battle Reports of Major Richard W. Young, Appendix V, were extracted from these documents.)

Warrum, Noble

Utah in the World War. Salt Lake City, 1924.

Whitney, Orson F.

History of Utah. 4 vols. Salt Lake City, 1892-1904.  
Popular History of Utah. Salt Lake City, 1916.

## 9. INTERVIEWS

Minerva Young Bennion, June 9, 1959.

Mary Young Burton, June 16, August 15, 1959.

Connie Young Dorton, June 5, 1959.

George D. Keysor, July 9, 1959.

C. Clarence Neslen, June 10, 1959.

Margaret Young Ray, August 22, 1959.

Clark Young, (All 1959), April 9, 15. June 3, 26, 29. July 22, 29. August 11, 26. (Dr. Clark Young is the custodian of the Richard W. Young Papers. Most of the interviews listed were short conversations only for the purpose of clarifying or confirming specific items of information.)

Ralph E. Young, June 15, 1959.

Richard W. Young Jr., May 22, June 3, 7, 1959.

#### 10. MISCELLANEOUS

Banquet Programs, Hotel Utah, August 23, 28, 1917. Biographical folders, Church Historian's Office.

Certificate of Completion of School Term as [Principal] of the Mantel High School. William L. Reid to Richard W. Young. March 24, 1876.

Charge and Specification Sheet of Brigadier-General David G. Swalm. The trial preparation and trial covered from late November 1884 until Mid-February 1885.

Gates, Susa Young

"My Hero and Heroine," Improvement Era. Poem, XIII, 146-7. (See Appendix VII.)

Price List of Subsistence Store, Governor's Island, April 1886.

"Roster of School Board Officers" Salt Lake City, 1893-94.

Williams, Paul, Captain

"A Brief Historical Sketch of the 65th Artillery Brigade." Unpublished paper prepared at the request of Brigadier-General F. S. Strong, forwarded to General Strong, April 12, 1919.

"Reunion of Wasatch Literary Association." Program. June 18, 1890.

"Welcome My Heroes." Special Program Pamphlet, prepared for the return of the Spanish American War Veterans, Salt Lake City, August 1889.

"Life at West Point." Anonymous Author. Poem. West Point contemporary of Richard W. Young, 1878-1882.

Young, Jacqueline

"The Most Unforgettable Character I've Ever Met." [Minerva Richards Young] Unpublished Essay. October 12, 1952.

Young, Minerva Richards

Reminiscences. Unpublished Paper covering from the childhood of Minerva Richards Young until 1886. It closely parallels her Journal and was based primarily on the Journal. Salt Lake City, 1940 [approximate date].

Clark Young Research Notes. Personal research of Dr. Clark Young on the business activities of his father, Richard W. Young, July 1959.

Young, Richard W.

Sample Battle Reports. February-April 1899. Extracted from War Department Annual Reports. See Appendix V.

Speech given to the Officers and Men of the 145th Field Artillery Regiment at the Relinquishment of Command of that Regiment by General Young. Camp Kearney, May 6, 1918. (See Appendix V)

Personal and Family Papers. Contains many miscellaneous letters, scrap books, photo albums, and two Journals. (Unfortunately the major share of Richard W.'s personal letters have been lost. Until her own death in 1958 Minerva Richards Young wrote an appreciable number of papers and essays. In these writings she frequently refers to her husband, Richard W. Young.)

## B. SECONDARY MATERIAL

### 1. BOOKS

Creer, Leland H.

The Founding of an Empire. Salt Lake City, 1947. Utah and the Nation. Seattle, 1929.

Forbes, W. Cameron

The Philippine Islands. 1. Boston, 1928.

Grant, Heber J.

Gospel Standards. Edited by Dr. G. Homer Durham under the direction of John A. Widtsoe and Richard L. Evans. Salt Lake City, 1941.

Link, Arthur S.

American Epoch. New York, 1956.

Neff, Andrew Love

History of Utah, Edited by Leland H. Creer. Salt Lake City, 1940.

Pyper, George D.

The Romance of an old Playhouse. Salt Lake City, 1928.

Richards, Charles C.

A Brief Sketch of the Democratic Party in the Territory of Utah, 1847-1896. Salt Lake City, 1943.

Roberts, B. H.

A Comprehensive History of the Church, Century I. III-V. Salt Lake City, 1930.

Smith, Joseph Fielding

Essentials in Church History. Salt Lake City, 1950.

Sutton, Wain

Utah, A Centennial History. 3 Vols. New York, 1915.

## 2. UNPUBLISHED THESES AND MANUSCRIPTS

Cazier, Stanford Orson

"The Life of William Henry Hopper, Merchant Statesman." Master's thesis. University of Utah. Salt Lake City, 1956.

Erickson, Velt G.

"The Liberal Party of Utah." Master's thesis. University of Utah. Salt Lake City, 1948.

Gardner, Hamilton

"Pioneer Military Leaders of Utah." Unpublished Manuscript. Utah State Historical Society.

"The Utah Territorial Militia." Unpublished Manuscript. Utah State Historical Society.

Peterson, Ferdinand E.

"Utah's Struggle for Statehood." Master's thesis. University of Utah. Salt Lake City, 1929.

Williams, Joe

"Political Parties of Utah." Master's thesis. University of Utah. Salt Lake City, 1933.

## 3. ARTICLES

Gilmore, Eugene A.

"Philippine Jurisprudence, Common Law or Civil Law," American Bar Association Journal. XVI. February 1930.

## 4. LETTERS AND INTERVIEW

Correspondence to Louis P. Murray from:

Colonel Hamilton Gardner, Retired. June 12, 1959.

Colonel Truman R. Young. June 22, July 7, 13, 1959.

Librarian and Academy Archivist, United States Military Academy. June 22, 1959.

Alumni Federation, Columbia University. June 23, 1959.

Army Command and Staff College, Fort Leavenworth. June 24, 1959.

General Services Administration, National Archives and Records Service. July 13, 1959.

Army Records Center, St. Louis. July 15, 1959.

Frederick Bernays Weiner to Colonel Truman R. Young, July 10, 1959.

Interview with Herbert M. Schiller, Professor of Law, University of Utah, July 26, 1959.



APPENDIX I

DESCRIPTION

of

THE LAST DAYS AND FUNERAL OF BRIGHAM YOUNG

28-29 August - 2 September 1877

(From the private Journal  
of Richard W. Young)

## LAST HOURS OF BRIGHAM YOUNG - Private Journal of Richard W. Young

28 AUGUST:

About 7 o'clock and just as I had arose [sic] from bed-I heard Aunt Eliza Snow informing the ice man that Grandfather was in a very critical condition having been attacked with severe pains early that morning. Completing my dressing, I proceeded immediately to the room in which he was laying sick, and found that Aunt Eliza had only reported facts as they existed. Grandfather's condition was truly apprehensions. His respiration was much stifled and impeded, and it was necessary to continually rocking his chest-and rubbing his limbs-to keep life within him. During the day his condition continued dangerous--although he was occasionally quite easy and seemingly free from great suffering.

It was also ascertained that inflammation had set in--a fact which tended greatly to alarm the members of the family and the intimate friends of the afflicted president. Toward evening the symptoms became more alarming--and it was found necessary about 12 to perform an operation upon his bowels as a last resort of medical aid.

Throughout the entire period of his sickness prominent elders and apostles were in his room administering to him--to which administrations he frequently responded with a hearty amen--indicating that it was his desire to live and that he was exercising his almost indomitable will to sustain his energies.

29 AUGUST:

But not withstanding this, and the fact that nearly all quorums in every stake of the Church were meeting to supplicate the Almighty to preserve the life of their beloved Prest., that sincere prayers were being incessantly offered by members of his family--and every assistance which medical skill could suggest was rendered--it became patent to all that he was gradually but inevitably sinking, and that his dissolution was but a matter of a few hours. Nearly the entire day and night of the 28th I was in his room rendering every assistance in my power, hoping and fervently praying that the Lord in his providence would listen to the multitude of orisons offered up to him and spare Grandfather to continue his course of usefulness among a people who loved him so well. The family, all of whom who were accessible within so few days to S.L. [Salt Lake] were collected in the various apartments of the house awaiting the dreadful and direful result with tearful eyes and mournful countenances. About 3 PM of the memorably 29th day of August, it became apparent to those present in the room of the sick man that he was rapidly approaching his death--so the family was called together - around the foot of the bed to await in dreadful suspense an event which they had been led to expect but which their every nature sorrowed to contemplate.

They were not destined to wait long as he sank from one stage of dissolution to another so easily and rapidly--that at one minute past four (4) he rendered up his spirit and the person of Brigham Young - so long and favorably known not only to his thousands of followers - as a great, good and magnanimous man, but to all the intelligent world as a practicer of righteous precepts - lay lifeless and powerless - among those who were

accustomed to call him father and friend, and to whom they were wont to resort for spiritual and temporal adjurations-

It is gratifying to think that he departed comfortable-and placidly-evidently undisturbed by that pain which had been racking his body during his illness.

It was but a gasp or two - a slight-and almost unpreceptible tremor-the rush of a thimble of blood to his lips-when his pulse ceased to denote the vibrations of this heart-his countenance assumed the blanched palor of death-and was quiet in that room of sorrow save the sobs and mourns and sighs of a grieved and bereft family and circle of friends. When it became evident that the soul had left the mortal tabernacle - Bro Geo Q. Cannon... offered up a prayer for the consolation of those deprived of a father and a President. Remaining at the sad spot only long enough to efface the marks of pain and sorrow around my eyes I hastened home to comfort mother in this hour when she must have felt as I did that we had lost the greatest friend and benefactor we had. I had the great satisfaction of fanning Grandfather-some eight hours on the 28--a great time during the night-of the 28 and 29, and of performing this act the only relief which could be rendered him at the time of his demise, so I was removed but a few feet of [from] him and at the side of his bed when he died.

## DESCRIPTION OF BRIGHAM YOUNG'S FUNERAL - Private Journal of Richard W. Young

2 SEPTEMBER:

This is the morning of the day upon which the funeral of our late lamented President is to be held. I arose somewhat early dressed myself, and as instructed, went up to the Lion House where the family were already gathering by appointment in order to march...to the New Tabernacle. About eleven O'clock the committee succeeded in getting the family into order, and marched in the following arrangement. Brothers of the deceased. Wives - daughters and [daughters-in-law] - sons - and sons-in-law - grandchildren and other relatives of the family forming an immense procession.

At 11:20 the concourse of relations reached the place of services - where there had for 2 hours been congregated an immense concourse of people from this and the surrounding counties. It is estimated that 15,000 people were insided this gigantic edifice and half as many again around the building making it all a vast assembly of 23,000 people.

Before 12 the time set for the beginning of ceremonies - the organist and an efficient orchestra performed some most excellent music.

Brigham Young's funeral march was rendered together with the "Dead March in Saul". At the designated time Bro Cannon, by the family request master of ceremonies - announced that if the congregation would attend the services would commence.

The choir sang page 139 - A most excellent prayer was offered by Eld. Franklin D. Richard. Singing on page 357. Remarks were then made respectively by Daniel H. Wells, Wilford Woodruff, Erastus Snow, John Taylor and Geo. Q. Cannon. Singing of Lines composed for the occasion by Cha's Penrose - and music by Geo. Careless. Benediction by Apostle Hyde. The procession then formed and headed by the 10th Ward Brass Band, moved slowly towards the cemetery on the hill. The D. M. in Saul mournfully played during the time of marching. Having arrived at the Grave the body was deposited in the vault which was dedicated by Elder Woodruff. When the family retired leaving behind the remains of one dead and kind to them. The instructions regarding Grandfather's burial were read in the meeting. How marked with simplicity and true greatness were these few wishes of the manner of conducting his burial and funeral.

APPENDIX II

SAMPLE LETTERS

from

HEBER M. WELLS

to

RICHARD W. YOUNG

(Heber M. Wells became the first elected  
Governor of the State  
of Utah 1896)

Salt Lake City Hall  
Thursday, February 10, '76

Richard W. Young, Esquire  
Manti, Sanpete

Dear R. W.

No matter how impossible it seems to you it is nevertheless strictly true that I had just made up my mind to write to you when I was astounded by the receipt of your letter.

What is creating the most surprise, what is the chief topic of conversation, and what is causing the most chagrin and displeasure in Salt Lake at present, is the unlooked for elopement and marriage of Miss Alice R. Young, which the same is "our Al of the Wasatch". I will not weary you with a prolonged account of the particulars, 1st, because you have perhaps heard more than I have, and 2nd, because I haven't time.

Suffice it to say, Al is married, that worthless specimen of humanity, Charley Hopkins is her husband, Cax is jilted, and still the world wags on.

Her family, so I understand, feel very badly; more especially Bud. They all have my heartfelt condolence.

It is generally believed that Bud will not commit suicide, nor will he "pine away in a state of hopeless matrimony", but (if I rightly predict) he will again mingle with the gay and festive, and hunt up another fair one upon whom to heap his affections.

Our meeting last evening was held at Rets, with no unusual ceremonies. Of course, there were the numerous flashes of wit, cutting sarcasms, and bad puns, which are coincident with our meetings, but aside from this, nothing occurred to mar the monotony of our proceedings.

Harry Culmer is now a member and on next evening he may prepare to be slandered, laughed at, abused, and calumniated at the pleasure of the budget box writers. He must go through the "kinks". I have, and you have, and why should he be exempt? Let us rally! and pour such hot words into his burning ears as will scorch his very inners, and make his blood run cold with fiery indignation. I will ransack the remotest corner of my cranium for wit, and coupling this with all the eloquence my soul possess, I'll "let him have it", loud and long, egad I will!

Can't you send something? But I must hasten to dinner or it will be cold. Tell Bert to write to me and I'll answer promptly.

Richard, "there's one little matter I'd like to speak to you about", which, if you'll give me leave, I'll mention.

Recent advices from Manti state that you are growing "very fond on" Janey. Methinks I see a shy blush steal o'er thy rigid visage at the mention

H. M. Wells--Feb. 10, 1876, cont'd

of that name. Well, freeze to her, freeze to her, it is difficult to do better, but as Samuel Weller beautifully says, "I didn't think yewd a' dun it, I didn't think yewd a' dun it."

Who is the happy (?) recipient of Bert's most loving smiles? eh?

Well, I don't know that I have anything more to say.

Your friend,

H. M. Wells

Address  
Box 402

Salt Lake Mar. 4/76

R. W. Young, Esq.  
Principal of the Manti High (?) School, etc.

My dear friend:

Since that ludicrous "breakdown" known as the Wasatch Exhibition, nothing has been stirring in Zion attractive enough to cause anybody to break his or her neck (that I know), nor is anything expected to transpire in the next week or two that will cause any very great amount of excitement (that I know of).

Yes, if we look farther into the future, say, three weeks, we are at once chagrined and disgusted and vexed by another display, or another attempt to display, the talent (?) of the Wasatch.

Yes, sir, our leader, the Grand Infallible, John T. Caine, is dissatisfied with our last and has willed that we must do something to redeem ourselves and, accordingly, has made a very grand speech urging the necessity of this step.

Of course, the girls all melted at the sight of their "beau ideal", and of course they all voted in the manner which "Johntee" prescribed.

You see by this that there was considerable strategy resorted to in bringing about his purpose, albeit, by fair or by foul means, not matter how, it sufficeth to say that on the last Saturday in this month the members of the W. L. Assoc., etc. will slink away to their respective dwellings after having tortured the few people present (who have perhaps been laboring under the base delusion that they will see something good) by their disagreeableness.

Well, R. W., what do you know? What is the excitement in Manti? and how is your girl?

Egad! I pity you. Bert told me the other day that you have got to stay in that isolated hole for three months more. Is that so? Young man, you have my sympathy.

Don't you think that it would be a good idea for you to come in town every week or two? I do. It will kind o' pacify you, like, uno. But, as a friend, I would advise you not come up to listen to any more entertainments of the kind you had the displeasure of hearing on last Saturday week.

I don't know that I have anything more to say.

Hebe



Dec. 18, 1877  
Salt Lake

R. W. Young, Esq.  
Ogden

My dear Agent:

Your letter speaking of my production written in imitation of Chas. Huey, Esq. Attorney at Law, in such flattering terms, is received, read, believed, and duly appreciated.

If you are willing, I mean to have engrossed copies of that part of your epistle referring to my production's merit, distributed gratuitously among my friends. It will let them know that at least one person (and withal a very able critique) has passed a very complimentary opinion upon one of my literary efforts. Yes, your letter will have a better influence in my behalf, I opine, than if the production itself were at large.

Nor is it possible at present to change this status of the matter, for the production is now "the Lord knows where."

Yes, great as would be the pleasure of satisfying my soaring ambition by being permitted to cope powers with the great Scipio, Africanus, yet it is beyond my power to do so, for, behold, some of my kindred, not being so literarily inclined as your humble servant, have, I fear, consigned the aforesaid production to the ignis inflammatus, where, laying all joking aside, it has met its just deserts.

Again let me urge you to devote a few minutes of your time to the enlivening of our Budget. Attack anybody, Me if you like, I don't care. The "Leviathan" Read is of late not so popular as he was. Of course, you know that he is engaged on the "Tribune" and he has, I understand, very wisely concluded to leave the Wasatch. You can easily see how it would injure us if he didn't. The Wasatch has already, through the gab and energy of certain mischief makers, attained in the eyes of our parents, the unenviable notoriety of an institution for the promotion of infidelity and sacrilegiousness and we are not anxious to be still further meshed by the injudicious acts of any one of its members.

However much people may talk about the affairs of the Wasatch, it is my honest conviction that its stablest members are today as firm in the belief of Mormonism as they ever were.

How strong they really are in the faith I do not know, but I make the above statement because I believe that the Wasatch has not drawn them away from said faith. I don't see how it could. Surely the proceedings of that institution are not such as would strengthen to any great degree the religious convictions of its members -- this I admit, and on the same grounds, I contend the Wasatch should be released from all charges of infidelic persuasion.

H.M.W. -- Dec. 18, 1877, cont'd.

It is true, many of its members are of that case, but these were such before they were Wasatches. It is simply absurd to think that an association where nothing of the kind is discussed but where a few persons meet and go through exercises for literary culture, could be the means of turning out nothing but infidels, as has been charged upon the Wasatch. Some have said that it is the outside talk and the influence of the few who are already unbelievers that makes the others such. It is not to be denied that "association with evil persons, corrupts, good manners" but again I urge the dismissal of the "Wasatch" from the argument for these persons undoubtedly belong to other associations and are members of other crowds, and hold the same influence wherever they go. They all belong to Salt Lake society and would associate and bring their influence to bear just as much if the Wasatch did not exist.

Read has been unwise in taking up a situation on the Tribune and was led to it only through lack of a better thing and not through Was. influence.

Well, Dick, what do you know? I have no particular news to state. Oh! yes, I have, attend! I went in the post office today and through the small port hole for the delivery of letters I thought I saw the top of a strange head. "Think's I to myself", surely Mr. Black is taller than that gentlemen who is now ensconded upon the delivery stool. Who can it be then? Tis not Josh because Josh is at another window. Tis not Smith, because Smith is over yonder. I approached the port hole and examined the top of the new comer's head. I saw that he had a very little bump of veneration, a very large bump of self conceit, and that philoprogenitiveness, amativeness and stubbornness were large and full. I saw that he had a very slick head and was a very small personage. I knew then who sat beneath. To make "assurance double sure", however, I determined to address him. "Anything for Wells," I said, when lo! the Lilliputian postmaster raised his eyes, his mouth enlarged. He smiled, a round, neat, baritone voice answered, "Hello, Hebe, "no, nothing for you" and I was right in my first conviction--it was B.B.

Yours,

H. M. Wells

APPENDIX III

LETTER

PRESIDENT JOHN TAYLOR

to

RICHARD W. YOUNG

June 27, 1884

TRUSTEE IN TRUST  
CHURCH OF JESUS CHRIST  
of  
LATTER-DAY SAINTS

P. O. Box B

Salt Lake City, Ut. June 27, 1884

Lieut. Richard W. Young,  
Fort Columbus,  
Governor's Island,  
New York Harbor,

Dear Brother:

Your favor of the 8th of June came duly to hand and, with your previous communication, written, last October, has been read to the council.

The spirit you manifest in your communications respecting the question submitted to us we are greatly pleased with, as we are fully assured that whatever our decision may be, it will be agreeable to you.

We fully sympathize with you in the deprivation to which you are subjected in not being able to mingle with the Saints, and to render your mother that personal attention which it would be your great pleasure to give and her delight to receive.

After careful consideration, however, of all the circumstances we have decided that, for the present, it will be better for you not to resign your position in the army. Coupled with this decision it was also decided that your mother should receive such suitable assistance as would relieve you from any concern respecting her subsistence and furnish her such comforts as her condition requires.

At the present time, as you are aware, our liberties and rights are being assailed with desperate energy. The determination is manifest to destroy us if possible. Already a large portion of our community is deprived of every political right, and the whole body are viewed as only fit for taxpayers. Other encroachments upon our liberties are threatened, and the opinion in some quarters is becoming settled that no Latter-day Saint should have the right either to vote or hold office. Your resignation at such a time as this would be attended, in view of this feeling, with bad effects. Now is not the time for us to resign positions but to hold on to every position that we have or can get to maintain our rights. We are the best and most loyal supporters of the Constitution. No greater outrage was ever committed than the passage of the Edmunds law. It is our right, which should be inalienable, to vote and to hold office and to have a full voice in the election of our own Governor and the other officers, and of the affairs of government. It is an outrage and a scandalous violation of the constitution to deprive us of this. No act of ours should contribute in any manner to strengthen the view already taken by those who are opposing us that we are

not fit to fill any position of trust or honor in the Republic. Much more might be said respecting this which cannot very well be explained in this communication; but I think we have said enough to give you our views respecting the question submitted.

Ever praying the Lord to uphold and preserve you, and to endow you with every qualification to make you mighty in the cause of truth, I remain,

Your brother,

John Taylor

APPENDIX IV

LETTER

RICHARD W. YOUNG

to

MAJOR W. A. SIMPSON

August 31, 1898

Manila, August 31, 1898

Major W. A. Simpson  
Washington, D. C.

My Dear Major:

It was last evening that I saw you at the Gov. General's palace, but neglected to speak to you concerning a matter of some importance to me.

When two batteries were ordered out of Utah, the Governor endeavored to get the right to appoint a Major--this was denied at Washington on the ground that two batteries were not a full battalion, etc.

At the last call, another battery was assigned to Utah and was raised and mustered in. Now some hitch has occurred and, it comes to me, that the War Department is saying that the Army is now topheavy with officers, etc.

As a matter of fact, I am now performing the duties of Major, having been assigned to command the Battalion--I acted in the same capacity at Camp Merritt. It seems with three batteries in the field the appointment of a Major is not conceded to the State. Gov. Wells of Utah has had the appointment of no officer higher than Captain, altho' (and because) Utah furnished three batteries, one troop of Cav. one troop rough riders, part Co. of engineers, hospital detachment, etc.

Naturally, my dear Major, I should like the majority and any aid you can render in securing a proper recognition of the Gov's. rights in this direction will be much appreciated. The Gov. will appoint me if his right to appoint be conceded.

Kindly enlist the aid of Col. Thomas Ward, with whom I served on Gen. Hancock's staff, and finally, close up the war and order us home.

Thanking you for the interest which, I feel assured, you will take in the matter, I remain,

Cordially and respectfully,

Richard W. Young

Willard [Young] ('75) received a splendid appointment from the President and others, doctors, paymasters, etc., have been equally fortunate, but the State has not had any appointment higher than Captain.

APPENDIX V

SAMPLE BATTLE REPORTS

written by

MAJOR  
RICHARD W. YOUNG

February-June 1899



## BATTLE REPORT A

HDQRS. SECOND DIVISION, EIGHTH ARMY CORPS,  
OFFICE OF CHIEF OF ARTILLERY  
Caloocan, P. I., Feb. 15, 1899

ASSISTANT ADJUTANT-GENERAL.  
Headquarters Second Division

SIR: I have the honor to submit a report of artillery operations in this division since the night of February 4, 1899.

At that date there were under my command Batteries A and B Utah Light Artillery, commanded, respectively, by Captains Grant and Wedgwood. Each had 4 3.2-inch B. L. steel rifles (model 1891), and 2 57 mm. Maxim-Nordenfeldt guns (1897), captured from the Spanish August 13, 1898. This was the only artillery in the division.

At the opening of hostilities on the night named I was directed by the division commander to carry out the prearranged plan; accordingly, I dispatched Captain Wedgwood with 2 3.2-inch rifles to the Sampaloc cemetery, there to cooperate with the Colorado regiment; Captain Grant with 3 3.2-inch rifles to Calle San Lazarus, there to cooperate in the forward movement of the Tenth Pennsylvania Regiment up that street with 2 guns, and to leave the third gun at Bilibid prison in reserve; and Lieutenant Seaman, Battery B, with 1 3.2-inch rifle, to the Caloocan road, Tondo, to cooperate with the Kansas regiment. Lt. Webb, Battery A, was stationed at the time at the Nebraska camp with 2 3.2-inch rifles. Lt. Naylor, with Detachment, was stationed on board the river gunboat LAGUNA DE BAY in charge of the Gatlings. I personally reported to the division commander on Calle Iris, and was soon ordered to send a second gun to support Lt. Seaman on the Caloocan road. I conducted this gun personally to the position then occupied by our forces, which was about 1,000 yards in advance of our previous outpost position. The gun was one of the Maxim-Nordenfeldts. These guns were served throughout the night from their position on the road--the only available site.

A heavy fire was poured in by the enemy at frequent intervals during that night, their advance approaching occasionally to within 150 yards at our position. They used some artillery from an intrenched position farther up the road, and fired about 15 solid shots into our lines. One of their shots struck down a couple of banana trees 10 feet in rear and immediately to the right of our right gun. Our guns used shell and shrapnel, most of the latter being punched at short ranges. Corporal Wardlaw and Private Peter Anderson were wounded at this position in the road while serving their gun, neither very seriously. On the succeeding day these guns advanced under Lt. Seaman along with the firing line of the advancing infantry, and were served under a galling fire. They were of great value in the charge on the insurgent intrenchments near the Spanish Blockhouse No. 1. After the enemy was driven from this position the 3.2-inch gun was advanced to a position on the Caloocan road opposite the blockhouse named, on the firing infantry line. There it was intrenched and remained until the advance on Caloocan Feb 10, frequently being brought into action to assist the Kansas regiment in repelling the insurgent attacks on their position. The Maxim-Nordenfeldt was moved Feb 6 to a position at Blockhouse

No. 2, near the Binondo cemetery. The 3.2-inch gun under Lt. Seaman was employed during the attack on Caloocan as long as possible and until it was imprudent to fire longer on account of the advancing infantry. It would have been impossible to take the gun along the road at the time of the advance on account of the flames from the burning houses on both sides of the road. About 9 p.m. Feb 10, however, the gun was pulled forward through the town of Caloocan to an advanced position on the Kansas line; subsequently, Feb 11, the gun was drawn back, placed in position on the hillside near the residence of Mr. Higgins, north of Caloocan, so as to command the causeway between Caloocan and Malabon. Here the gun, with a platoon of the Sixth Artillery, and a 3.6-inch mortar, under Corporal Boshard, Battery B, Utah Light Artillery, all under immediate command of Lt. Flaming, Sixth U. S. Artillery, remained heavily intrenched.

I am satisfied that no troops during this advance have performed more dangerous service than these detachments under Lt. Seaman in their perilous program up the Caloocan road; too much, therefore, in my judgment, can not be said in praise of their intrepidity and efficiency. (Lt. Seaman's detailed report is appended.)

Two guns of the Sixth United States Artillery under Second Lieut. Adrian S. Flaming, Sixth United States Artillery, reported for duty with the division early in the afternoon of Feb 10, and were assigned a favorable position on the Montana line, with a view up the railroad track of a number of railroad buildings in Caloocan, of a section of the insurgent trenches, and of a gun which the insurgents had disembarked from the cars, but had not prepared an emplacement for, the gun being situated near the railroad shops.

During the advance on Caloocan this platoon did very accurate and effective work under the heavy small-arm fire from the enemy. The morning of the 11th the guns were moved to the intrenchment in Caloocan previously mentioned, where they now remain.

In addition to these two guns, the Utah gun, and the mortar, fifth gun (Hotchkiss mountain cannon, caliber 1.65) has been placed near the Higgins residence with a command of the railway track for about 2,500 yards to the north. It has been necessary to use these guns on several occasions to suppress annoying sharpshooters; in each instance their use has proven to be very effective.

During the construction of the larger intrenchments at Caloocan Private C. S. Hill, Battery B, and Lieut. A. Seaman, Battery B, were wounded by the enemy, the former being shot in the back, the latter through the flesh of the calf, neither wound being serious. Hill was sitting down within the work when shot and Lt. Seaman was outside directing a party who were strengthening the parapet. (Detailed report of Lt. Flaming annexed.)

Captain Grant (with Lt. Critchlow) and 2 pieces advanced with the Tenth Pennsylvania regiment on the night of Feb 4 to a position near a small cemetery near the San Lazarus Hospital. Here he intrenched and awaited daylight, firing during the night only a few shots as occasion seemed to demand. From this position he shelled the Chinese hospital,

the Chinese cemetery, and the Binondo cemetery, where the insurgents were making a stubborn resistance to the advance of the Montana and Pennsylvania regiments. Excellent shooting was done, the enemy dislodged and the advance of the infantry rendered comparatively easy. From advanced positions on the crossroad to the Chinese hospital at Lico, and at the Chinese hospital, the 2 guns, now supplemented by the third gun from Bilibid, under First Sergeant Hines, rendered valuable aid in dislodging the enemy from the high ground occupied by the cemeteries.

After the Pennsylvania, South Dakota, and Montana regiments, and the Third United States Artillery (armed as infantry) had, with Grant's assistance, dislodged the insurgents from the ridges the guns were hurried forward to and advanced position near the Binondo cemetery, where they were serviceable in driving the enemy from scattered positions beyond the infantry skirmish line. These 3 guns were placed in position at an angle of the cemetery wall (Binondo cemetery) behind embrasures constructed and formerly occupied by the Spanish.

February 6 the Nordenfeldt, from Lt. Seaman's command, with a second from the barracks, manned by a section of Battery A, were intrenched near the Spanish stone Blockhouse No. 2 and placed under command of Lt. Critchlow. A 3.6-inch rifled mortar was procured from the arsenal, Manila, and placed in position near Captain Grant's 3.2-inch rifles. These 6 guns were employed at various times, Feb 6 to 9, in repelling attacks on the Kansas regiment, shelling groups of sharpshooters, etc.

The advance on Caloocan, Feb 10, was preceded by thirty minutes' cannonading by the navy and the 9 guns on the left of our position. Grant's and Critchlow's guns had as targets the woods in advance of the Kansas and Montana regiments, the insurgents' trenches near the railway track south of Caloocan, the Caloocan church and convent, the railway shops and station, the cemetery, the town generally, the rifle pits in advance of the town, and the woods on the right of the open plain. Extremely accurate work was done; one of the best shots of the campaign was at a party throwing up earthworks at the cemetery gate, the left side of the gate having been destroyed at an estimated range of 2,600 yards by the first shell.

Shrapnel fire proved to be very efficacious at a range of 2,000 yards in driving back a party which advanced fearlessly from the right to attack a flanking party under command of Major Bell, U. S. Volunteer Engineers.

The 3.2-inch rifles remain at the Binondo Cemetery church, the 2 Nordenfeldts, under Lt. Critchlow, having been placed in a new position to the front of the South Dakota position near Blockhouse No. 4.

Corporal Peterson, Battery B, was shot through the flesh of the leg at Binondo Church Feb 9. (Capt Grant's report is appended.)

Capt Wedgwood, with 2 guns of his battery, reached Sampaloc Cemetery in good time on the night of Feb 4, the men having dragged the guns for 3 miles without assistance from any other organization. They took position near the Sampaloc Cemetery and were constantly engaged from about half-past 5 until 8 of the morning of Feb 5, the enemy being strongly intrenched and posted at ranges varying from 300 to 700 yards. The practice on

Blockhouses Nos. 5, 6, and 4 was very effective, causing the enemy to return in great numbers, and paving the way for the infantry advance. The guns were served under a heavy cross fire, the cannoneers having little or no protection. From personal observation I am able to concur in Capt Wedgwood's estimate and commendation of his men. I call attention to his mention of Hospital Steward Shellby B. Cox, U. S. A.

Capt Wedgwood's 2 guns mentioned have now been posted on the line of the Colorado trenches, about three-fourths a mile beyond Blockhouse No. 5 (Capt Wedgwood's report is appended.)

The 2 guns under Lieut. W. C. Webb were moved at the call to arms, February 4, to their previously selected position at McLeods Hill, near by. These guns were not fired until daylight. Two field guns of the enemy were successively silenced, the one near the San Juan Bridge being dismounted and overturned. The field of fire from this position was very large, extending through an arc of nearly 180 degrees.

Throughout this wide extent of country these guns were directed at buildings and trenches occupied by the enemy and at their stronghold, Blockhouse No. 7, most successfully in every instance, the effect being to silence the enemy's fire almost without exception. Gunner Corpl. John C. Young was shot in the chest and died about 4 p.m. of the same day. Private Wilhelm I. Goodman was shot in the head and instantly killed. Both casualties occurred while serving their guns at McLeods Hill.

These 2 guns were moved forward to the Deposito during the night of Feb 5. Monday (the 6th) these 2 guns, with 2 Nordenfeldts, commanded by Lt. Gibbs, took part in the advance on the pumping station. During the advance the artillery was substantially on the skirmish line at all times. The 4 guns were brought into action four times, and in each instance was marked success, the result being to clear the way for an almost bloodless advance by the infantry. The enemy was not merely shelled from successive positions in the front of the advance, but was followed with shrapnel over the ridges on the flanks. The village of Mariquina was shelled during the evening, and a number of long-range shots fired at retreating insurgents on the plain across the San Juan. The 4 guns mentioned remain in position on the bluffs above the pumping station. The 2 Nordenfeldts have been advanced on several occasions to the outposts.

Just previous to the advance toward the pumping station Q. M. Sergt, Harry A. Young, who had passed his examination as assistant surgeon for the battalion, and no doubt had been commissioned as such by the governor of Utah, and who was under appointment to meet me at the Deposito, advanced under some misapprehension into the insurgent lines and was killed, his remains being found about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  miles from the Deposito near the road.

Under orders from the division commander the remaining 2 Nordenfeldts, under Lieut. G. A. Gibbs, manned by one section of Battery A and one of Battery B, moved forward early on the morning of the 5th to report to Colonel Stotsenburg at Santa Mesa. The Platoon was ordered to advance to the San Juan Bridge under cover of a Tennessee battalion, but the latter had not arrived and with a few flanking skirmishers the 2 guns were moved at double time down the 500-yard slope to the bridge in the face of a heavy fire from the wooded slopes beyond, coming into action near the

bridge and advancing with the infantry firing lines up the hill leading to the Deposito. The guns were handled with great skill and efficiency. This movement, in the open view of the enemy under close range, was one of the most bold and commendable of the campaign. The platoon moved to the vicinity of the Deposito and on the 6th took part in the advance to the pumping station, as previously described.

My own movements during the time covered by this report were as follows:

I was present with Lieut. G. A. Seaman's platoon on the Caloocan road the nights of Feb 4 and 5; on the 5th I spent the morning with the det. of Capt Wedgwood and Lieuts Webb and Gibbs during the part of their commanding, and the afternoon with Capt Grant's guns during the advance on the cemeteries; on the 6th, the morning, in replacing Capt Wedgwood's guns to conform to the new infantry lines, and the afternoon was present in command of the artillery during the advance from the Deposito to the pumping station; from the 7th until this date I have been almost constantly with the guns on the left of our position and commanded the several detachments in the attack on Caloocan.

I have not the accurate figures at hand, but may approximately state our expenditure of ammunition during the operations above detailed to have been 600 rounds.

In concluding, I desire to commend most heartily and without distinction the officers and men in the organization under my command; the amount of labor done by them in dragging guns and constructing earth works has been prodigious, and it has always been done cheerfully. All have been fearless. Compelled to advance along open roads, usually in plain view of the enemy without the opportunity of concealment, they have unshrinkingly served their guns. It has, too, been a feature of these operations that in every advance the guns have gone forward, practically on the line of skirmishers. Their willingness to work and their intrepidity have not been more conspicuous than the skill with which they have handled their guns and their accuracy of aim.

Dr. J. S. Kellogg, battalion surgeon, has been tireless in his attention to the medical and surgical needs of the men.

Very respectfully, your obedient servant,

RICHARD W. YOUNG  
Major Utah Artillery, Chief of Artillery

## BATTLE REPORT B

HDQRS. SECOND DIVISION, EIGHTH ARMY CORPS,  
OFFICE OF CHIEF OF ARTILLERY  
Manila, Apr 8, 1899

ASSISTANT ADJUTANT-GENERAL  
Headquarters Second Division

SIR: Pursuant to instructions from the division commander, I have the honor to submit the following report of artillery operations in this division during the month of March, 1899:

Artillery in the division: Battalion Utah Light Artiller, Maj. R. W. Young, commanding, composed of Batteries A (Wedgwood's) and B (Grant's temporarily commanded by Lt. Critchlow); one platoon Light Battery D, Sixth U. S. Artillery (Dyer's), Lt. A. S. Flaming, U. S. A.; commanding detachment U. S. Marines (With Colt's gun), Ensign C. Davis, U. S. N., commanding.

Ordinance in use: Ten 3.2-inch B. L. steel rifles; one 3.6-inch B. L. steel mortar; three .50-caliber Gatling guns; four 57-millimeter Maxim-Nordenfelts (Spanish); three Hotchkiss revolving cannon; one Colt's automatic gun, caliber 6 millimeter. Total 22.

At the beginning of and during the principal part of the month, all the guns enumerated were in position on the Second Division lines, extending from the pumping station near Santalon, on the right, to Caloocan on the left; Battery A, Utah Volunteers, occupying the right, and Battery B, Utah Volunteers, and the platoon, Sixth Artillery, and the Colt's gun, the left of the line.

The reports of Captain Wedgwood, Lieutenants Gibbs, Critchlow, Naylor, Seasam and Hines, of the Utah Artillery, and of Lt. Flaming, Sixth Artillery, and Ensign Davis, U. S. N., are appended. Owing to my unfamiliarity with the operations covered by some of these reports, and the fact that the operations in which I participated are thoroughly covered by others, I consider it both unnecessary and undesirable for me to make this report in detail.

During the month my personal headquarters were at Caloocan, but I frequently visited other detachments along the lines. I was in charge of the artillery on the expedition to Malolos, and personally selected the site and superintended the firing in every instance in which any part of the artillery was in action.

I am able to state, as in preceding reports, that it has been the almost invariable rule that the artillery has been advanced to, and frequently beyond the infantry skirmish lines, and has been used at ranges (notably at the Tuliahan and Marilao rivers) usually deemed impracticably close for artillery. In no instance during the advance to Malolos, save at the railway crossing near Malolos, was the artillery screened by sandbags or field works.

Experience has demonstrated the peculiar effectiveness of artillery against the Philippine insurgents. In my opinion much loss of life among

our troops may be averted by the abundant use of field artillery; three guns per 1,000 men would not I believe, be excessive. By reason of range and power the 3.2-inch rifle is an ideal weapon, but on account of bad roads and the absence of roads and bridges a lighter gun will probably be found more serviceable. The Colt's automatic gun has proven to be a valuable support for and adjunct to artillery, furnishing with a small detachment, a volume of fire which is efficacious in restraining the enemy's small-arm fire, and thus dispensing with the necessity of detaching infantry as supports. A 1.65-inch Hotchkiss mountain gun used by the Nebraska regiment was pulled over the most inaccessible places and did excellent service, but proved too light in caliber for really effective use.

During the march to Malolos several bow springs were broken, several bolts on dazy tongs were sheared off, the hook of the doubletree was broken, a plato, on the bottom of the lunette was wrenched off, a tongue was broken, and the bushings of several breechblocks were scored out and replaced at the arsenal, Manila; the mules developed their ancient characteristics--stubbornness and timidity--and balked in vital places and showed an exasperating disinclination to venture into bad places in the roads or cross suspicious-looking bridges. It became necessary on three occasions, on account of the absence or destruction of the wagon bridges, to run the guns by hand over unfloored railway bridges and to swim the mules. The mortar shrapnel frequently failed to burst, the charge merely blowing out the head and the contents. The 3.2-inch shrapnel burst in the bore with such alarming frequency that it cannot be used over friendly troops.

General Wheaton spoke to me in very flattering terms of the excellent service rendered by Corpl. Harvey Dusenberry, Battery B, Utah Artillery, and his detachment, who were with a Hotchkiss revolving cannon, brought from Caloocan to Malolos, in company with the Twenty-second U. S. Infantry; also of the valuable service rendered by Lt. G. A. Seaman and his platoon at the railway crossing of the Tuliabar. General Hale describes the services rendered by Lt. R. C. Naylor's platoon near San Francisco del Monte, March 25, as very creditable and effective.

There were about 3 casualties during the month--one serious and two light wounds--in Battery B, Utah Artillery, a remarkably low percentage in view of the frequent and close exposure of the cannoneers.

Total rounds fired during the month, app. 1,000.

I desire to record by judgement that the services of Lts. Critchlow and Flaming and of Ensign Davis, who were under my personal observation, have been marked by Professional skill, judgement, and personal bravery of the highest order. That the services of the other officers of the command have been of a similar character appears certain in view of the flattering tributes from commanding and other officers who have served with them. The men of the several detachments, almost without exception, have performed their duties ably, cheerfully, and inflexibly.

Very respectfully, your obedient servant,

RICHARD W. YOUNG  
Major Utah Artillery, Chief of Artillery

FIG. 10

Sketches  
of  
BATTLE SCENES

Tulfaan

Marilao



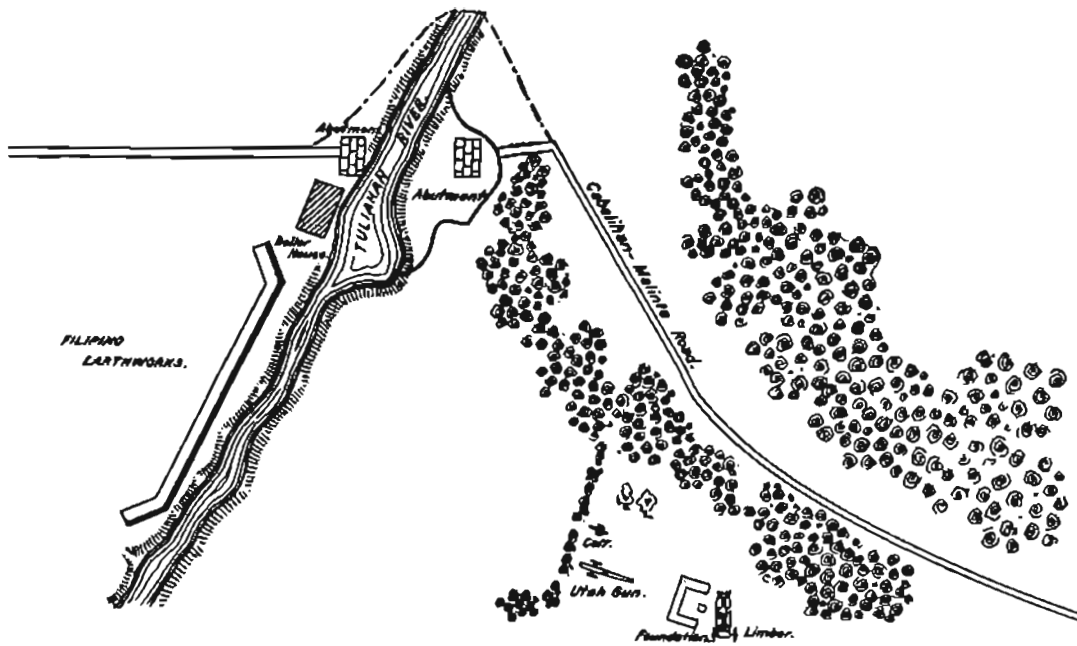


FIGURE I

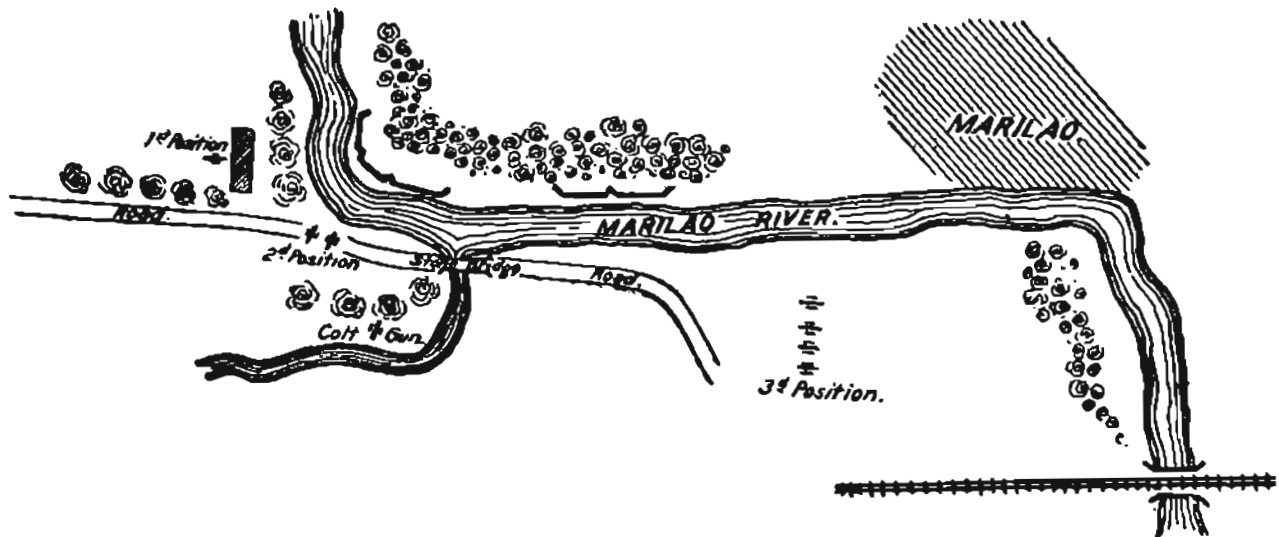


FIGURE II

## BATTLE REPORT C

HDQRS. SECOND DIVISION, EIGHTH ARMY CORPS,  
 OFFICE OF CHIEF OF ARTILLERY  
 Manila, P. I., June 4, 1899

ASSISTANT ADJUTANT-GENERAL  
 Headquarters Second Division

SIR: Pursuant to telegraphic instructions from the division commander, I have the honor to submit the following supplementary and more extended report on the action at the road crossing on the Tuliahan River, March 25, 1899:

The general, accompanied by his staff, a platoon of Battery B, Utah Artillery, under First Lt. John F. Critchlow, a platoon of Light Battery D, Sixth U. S. Artillery under command of Second Lt. Adrain S. Flaming, Sixth Artillery (both platoons being under my command as chief of artillery of the division), troop of the Fourth U. S. Cavalry, under command of Major Rucker, and Ensign Cleland Davis, U. S. N., in command of a Colt's automatic gun and detachment, had halted temporarily at a small church on the road from Cabalahan to Malinta to enable the general to reestablish his lines, the component regiments of which having temporarily failed on account of the density of the timber and underbrush to keep in close touch with each other. Lt. Whitworth of the staff had been sent forward along the road with a message having this purpose in view, and was fired on by a party of insurgents intrenched at the river crossing. Having reported this to the general, the latter sent forward a detachment of dismounted cavalrymen from Troop E, under Captain Wheeler and Lt. Batson. The detachment advanced in skirmish order and was soon heard to be heavily engaged. After the firing had continued for about a half hour Maj. J. F. Bell, U. S. V., who had gone forward with the detachment for the purpose of observation, sent an orderly back to the general asking for reinforcements. The former stated that no other troops were then available, but on my request to take a gun with Lt. Davis's automatic gun to the front, the general directed the orderly to ask Maj. Bell to report whether these guns could be sent to the aid of the hardpressed troops.

In order that this report may be more easily understood, I will undertake to make the following rough sketch of the scene of action: [See Figure I of Battle Sketches, page 218]

The banks of the Tuliahan River, where intersected by the road, were from 15 to 20 feet perpendicular height. The abutments of a former bridge remained, one on either bank of the river; but a very steep and sidelong road, passable for only light carromatos and little used, crossed the chasm a few rods above the dismantled bridge. The Filipinos had made a strong breastwork of stones and earth on the right abutment, and had so arranged a heavy steel bridge beam over the top of the breastwork as to leave a continuous loophole, or slot, from which the opposite approaches might easily be commanded. Adjacent to this approach, and just below it in the stream, was a boiler and engine house, said to be the pumping station for the Malabon or Polo waterworks. With a few feet interval, still lower in the stream, began a field work of semi-permanent character, about 200 feet in length along the river. The exterior and interior slopes were sustained by bamboo wickerwork. A slot, about 6

inches in vertical height at the interior slope and flaring to about 18 inches at the exterior, ran from end to end. Above was a layer of earth, about 2 feet in thickness, sustained by a bamboo flooring.

Upon receiving the order to take the guns I instructed Lt. Critchlow to order his leading piece forward and for Lt. Davis to come. Advancing a few hundred yards, we came to the top of a small hill, on the other slope of which the bullets were falling thickly. Halting the guns until the ground might be reconnoitered, I rode forward with Major Bell. No available position could be found near the crest of the hill, and we rode well forward to the bottom of the hill, where I selected a position which commanded an excellent view of the intrenchment across an open field and furnished a slight screen of underbrush in a row of bamboos for the guns and personnel, and a ruined stone foundation as shelter for the mules.

The enemy's work was scarcely 100 yards distant. While selecting the site Capt. Sawtelle appeared on the ground and remained with the detachment until the enemy was dislodged.

The guns were brought down by Lt's Critchlow and Davis at a rapid gait. A bamboo fence was cut through, and the 3.2-inch rifle run in and unlimbered near the stone foundation and the mules speedily placed under cover. The piece was run forward by hand through the rough intervening space, obstructed by banana trees and other plants, to a position behind the screen.

Under my instructions the 3.2-inch rifle was loaded with percussion shell, and both it and the Colt's automatic were directed to aim at the slot in the hostile fieldwork. Firing was opened simultaneously and was continued as rapidly as possible on the part of the fieldpiece and continuously by the Colt's until the former had discharged 3 shots, when the enemy was seen to be evacuating the intrenchment. We then followed them up the hill with sharpnel and the automatic gun fire, with apparent telling effect. After our first shots the insurgents, who had been pouring a murderous fire into the woods with a view of controlling the road, redoubled their exertions and apparently devoted their chief attention to our position, which, on account of our using smokless powder, they could not definitely locate, but which, on account of the nearness of the explosion of our guns, they were able accurately to approximate. The bullets fell in a storm at and around our position, but fortunately--almost miraculously, in view of the absence of bullet-proof cover--no one was hit.

At Major Bell's information that the enemy still remained in the engine house and bridgehead, we limbered the gun and ran it to a position near the cavalry, where these positions were visible. One shell was fired into the boiler house, and the remnant of the defending force was dislodged. The insurgents were estimated at over 100 men.

The cavalry when I first saw them occupied a position scarcely 75 yards from the enemy--this the position which I understood they had occupied from the beginning of the engagement.

An inspection of the works showed that two of our shells had struck the floor of the slot, exploding at the interior face with disastrous result, and that the third had struck the exterior face, but had failed to perforate the wall, which was about 10 feet in thickness. The effectiveness of the cavalry fire may be judged by the fact that the steel beam referred to, forming a cap to the bridgehead, which was about 20 feet in length and 18 inches in width, was struck by no less than 90 Krag-Jorgensen carbine bullets.

If I may be permitted, I desire to commend as worthy of special recognition for bravery and efficiency Major Bell, Captain Wheeler, Captain Sawtelle, and Lts. Critchlow, Batson, and Davis.

Very respectfully, your obedient servant,

RICHARD W. YOUNG  
Major Utah Artillery, Chief of Artillery.

## BATTLE REPORT D

HDQRS. SECOND DIVISION, EIGHTH ARMY CORPS,  
OFFICE OF CHIEF OF ARTILLERY  
Manila, June 10, 1899

ASSISTANT ADJUTANT-GENERAL  
Headquarters Second Division.

SIR: Having been requested by the division commander to furnish him a special report on the use of the artillery in the engagement at Marilao, I have the honor to submit the following:

On the morning of April 27, 1899, I was ordered to take position with the artillery in advance from Meycauayan to Marilao, immediately in the rear of the leading battalion of the Kansas regiment. The artillery under my command at that time consisted of one platoon of Battery B, Utah Light Artillery, under command of Lieut. John F. Critchlow, one platoon of Dyer's Light Battery, Sixth U. S. Artillery, under command of Lt. Cleland Davis, U. S. N. The advance was ordered about 11 am. We proceeded along the wagon road about 500 yards in the rear of the Kansas battalion, which moved out in column of fours, but was soon afterwards deployed to the left of the road. The other battalions of the Kansas regiment were immediately in our rear in column. We have moved forward less than a mile when the infantry engaged with the enemy 800 of 1,000 yards to our front. I rode forward with Lt. Davis to reconnoiter the ground with a view to ascertaining if the guns could not advantageously be employed. Upon reaching the rear guard we dismounted, leaving our horses in the timber, and walked out into the open field in search of Colonel Funston, or the other officer in command. The battalion was entirely deployed and engaged quite actively with the enemy intrenched on the other side of the Marilao River. Some of our troops advanced to the bank of the stream and found it to be deep and unfordable, and without bridges or boats. Major Metcalf then in command, brought his battalion back a distance of 500 or 600 yards and withdrew them under cover, having suffered a number of casualties during the advance. Meanwhile Colonel Funston appeared, and a consultation followed as to the best means of carrying the position. He stated he believed he might be able to get possession of several rafts which had been seen on the opposite side of the river if the insurgent fire could be kept down while making the attempt. I told him I would order Lt. Davis with the automatic gun to a position on the road as near the enemy's trenches as practicable, if he would detail a company to assist. The offer was immediately accepted and Captain Orwig was ordered to perform the duty. Lt. Davis with his detachment and gun immediately proceeded up the road and with a platoon of Captain Orwig's company crept into a very secure position, screened by vegetation and protected by the raised roadbed from the enemy's trenches not more than 75 yards distant across the stream. Major Metcalf's battalion was immediately deployed and advanced to a renewal of the attack. I went forward to look for a gun position and found an advantageous location under a native hut which commanded a full view of the trenches scarcely 60 yards away, with a slight screen of vegetation, but entirely without protection. I immediately sent orders to Lt. Critchlow to bring up one of his guns, leaving the mules well under cover down the road. The order was promptly complied with and the gun was run into the position selected, the limber being left in the road, hidden from the view of the enemy by the trees along the roadway. The following is a rough sketch from memory of the scene of action: See Figure II

I instructed Lt. Critchlow to fire as rapidly as consistent with accurate aiming at the trenches on the opposite bank of the river, with both shell and shrapnel, and to devote some attention to the open country, slight glimpses of which could be gotten through the trees bordering the stream. The insurgent trench, though but a comparatively short distance away, was scarcely visible, being dug into the ground and the dirt therefrom scattered over the adjoining space without at any time raising it into a conspicuous parapet. The Colt's automatic gun and the platoon of infantry were vigorously employed during our firing, and served to make the enemy extremely inaccurate in aim. The fire being kept down so successfully, I sent back ordering up one of Lt. Fleming's pieces, but was informed soon afterwards that Major Bell who had been upon the ground previously, had, upon his own responsibility, ordered a second gun, of Lt. Critchlow's platoon, forward. Upon its arrival both guns were run into the road and forward beyond the intervening timber to the bank of the river, where several shots were directed at the insurgent trench, at the point of the river directly opposite, from 40 to 50 yards distant. After 3 or 4 shots, delivered from the position at the road, 3 or 4 white rags, tied to sticks or guns, were shoved up above the insurgent trench. A few minutes before this event a part of the Pennsylvania regiment and a few men from the Third Artillery had taken position on the same bank of the river as ourselves and were firing vigorously at the opposite trenches. Upon the appearance of the white flags firing immediately ceased along our front at this point, and the insurgents were told in Spanish to stand up, an order which they conformed to with apparent reluctance. Lt. Coulter, of the Pennsylvania regiment, with one of the enlisted men of that command, stripped and swam the river and gathered the guns and other arms of those who surrendered. In the meantime quite a party of insurgents scampered out of the trench back into the woods and escaped. At about the same moment Lt. Coulter reached the trench, Colonel Funston and a squad of men from his regiment emerged from the trees to the left and rear of the insurgent position, having crossed on a raft lower down the stream. About 25 men surrendered. Many of those who had been in the trenches at the point of the river and all who were in position above or below that point had escaped soon after the guns opened.

The arch of the stone bridge over the confluent, immediately to the right of firing position, had been destroyed, and it was impossible for us to cross until the engineers had constructed a bridge. About half past 4 in the evening we moved forward to a position south of the Marilao River not far from the railroad, the infantry with the exception of the Montana regiment, which was in reserve, having crossed the river on the railway bridge, and being deployed in their several positions and engaged in making camp for the night. At the moment of reaching our camping ground the enemy advanced in considerable force, in an extended order, upon our infantry line. It was impossible on the south side of the river to find a position from which the enemy could be seen.

Having been forward to our infantry lines, I felt satisfied that the artillery might be brought into battery and used advantageously by firing over the screen of bamboos 300 or 400 yards to our front. This I directed, and we fired nearly 30 shells over the heads of our troops, who were invisible, at the invisible enemy, at ranges of from 2,000 to

2,500 yards. It was gratifying to learn that several, at least, of the shots thus fired under difficulties had fallen directly into the ranks of the attacking party.

I have mentioned, and desire to mention again, the intelligent and fearless service rendered on this occasion by Lts. Critchlow and Davis.

Very respectfully,

R. W. Young  
Major, U. S. V., Chief of Artillery

APPENDIX VI

LETTER

RICHARD W. YOUNG

to

GOVERNOR

HEBER M. WELLS

December 31, 1898



Manila P. 11, Dec. 31, 1898

Governor H. M. Wells,  
Salt Lake City, Utah

My dear Governor:--

The first cabled accounts of our operations here conveyed the very erroneous impression that it was A battery, under my personal command, which alone had figured so conspicuously on the night of July 31. Accounts of subsequent events have given to that battery and to me a relative prominence, which it and I did not deserve. I believe I need not assure you, or anyone acquainted with me, that such partial statement neither originated with nor were known to me before transmittal.

I had believed that the great mass of correspondence from the batteries, which has since appeared in our home papers, had served to give our citizens an absolutely fair and impartial view of the part borne by each of the batteries in the contest; but, upon late reflection, it seems to me to be only just that I should write you a few lines for publication, preferably, if you see fit, correcting any such false impressions.

In the first place, I desire to say in all sincerity that if it shall be the deliberate judgment of the officers and men of the battalion that I have been as good a soldier as my friend and companion, Major F. A. Grant, in energy, resourcefulness, care for the men, discipline, courage, promptitude and in all those other qualities which go to make up military success, I shall esteem myself fortunate. Splendid as the personnel of A battery was, with its excellent lieutenants, non-commissioned officers and cannoneers, it was not one whit superior either in skill, intelligence, energy, bravery, discipline or patriotism to the superb manhood of B battery.

They were "sons of the self-same race, and blood of the self-same clan", and just as well drilled and instructed. A battery claims no higher place for itself than to be counted equal in honorable service with its companion battery.

So closely have the two been associated that there are some officers and organizations here today who speak of our battalion as the Utah battery, not knowing we are two. With justice we claim that no organization here, volunteer or regular, has won a better name than our own, and I may add that the name has been won as much through the services of Major Grant's battery as by my own--in no good enterprise has the Cleofare's silk gift to A battery been advanced higher or farther to the front than that of B. My own real sorrow in losing that close touch with my old battery, which came with my promotion, was compensated by the gain of a partial interest as in so excellent a battery as the other.

As to services: personally I was not present in the trenches during the night of July 31, until after the firing had ceased; nor did I on that occasion drag my guns through mud to flank the enemy; nor there, or at any other time, perform any acts of personal heroism. I was not present in the trenches during one of the nights when our lines were bombarded. I am,

therefore, a very ordinary kind of hero, and claim no greater credit for myself than that I attended closely to business with such ability as I possessed, and went wherever duty called me, but chiefly that I showed my willingness, by volunteering to undergo such dangers and hardships as the war might develop.

So far as the service of B battery was concerned, I may say that in each of the engagements prior to August 13, and in the battle of that next day, Major Grant had just as many guns, officers and men, and fired just as many and well aimed shots as A battery. Nor was his battery commanded by me at any time between June 15, the date of embarking at San Francisco, and August 27; nor am I entitled to any of the credit due Major Grant and his officers for the excellent state of instruction of his battery.

Major Grant was brevetted as I was and with the same rank--we have both felt that the honor was granted us, not as a personal tribute, but as a just recognition of the services of the officers and men whom we had the honor and pleasure to command. My own promotion as Major did not come as the result of "heroism" or as a reward for meritorious services, as our home papers implied, but as the result of your own efforts commenced even at our enlistment and continued until the authorities at Washington recognized the right of Utah to have a battalion organization with a Major in command.

There is before me a magazine containing Alfred Austin's poem on American and English kinship. In it find the following lines, which I address to those of B battery, if any there be, who have a sense of injustice and wrong.

Now let us have done with a worn out tale  
 The tale of an ancient wrong  
 And our friendship last long as love doth last  
 And be stronger than death is strong.

With great respect  
 Your obedient servant,

Richard W. Young

APPENDIX VII

POEM

MY HERO and HEROINE

by

Susan Young Gates

## MY HERO and HEROINE

General Richard W. Young and His Wife Mrs. Minerva Richards Young

Susa Young Gates

You lay tributes on his grave who now lies quietly asleep!  
 But I, who knew them both - I, who watched the love-light  
     in his eyes when she was near,  
 Who saw him leave for foreign shores with sound of beating  
     drums and swirling pipes,  
 While she stood near with her arms empty,  
 Only when his brood of noisy boys or cheerful, busy girls  
 Swept to her breast in sudden need of mother-comfort -  
 I, who knew them best would lay my richest tribute on the  
     patient brow  
 Of that good woman who never crossed his will, or taught her  
     children disrespect of his command  
 Through one rebellious look or word of her's.

He is a hero, I do not question that.  
 I knew much of the leader stuff which went into his manly  
     soul,  
 But I knew, too, that all his splendiddeeds, his selfless giving  
     of himself, to comrades, and to country,  
 His tender care for homesick boys, for lonely little children,  
 Came largely from the fountain of a heart whose springs  
     were kept sweet and pure because of daily contact  
 With a wife who knew no bitterness, no guile, no cheap or  
     tawdry motive.

Not all men are so blessed. Some blighted, wisened men I've  
     met  
 Whose hampered souls have frozen on a hearthstone cold and  
     lifeless  
 Without ruddy flame of sympathy or glow of unselfish wifely -  
     love.  
 Other men, deprived of wifely sympathy and help,  
 Have some way stumbled on and by the force of faith and un-  
     dimmed courage,  
 Have found the heights of fame and service;  
 Dragging after them the chained load of daily fret and cold  
     complaint:  
 Such men are doubly heroes.

I hope to meet my loved and honored soldier-nephew on the  
     Other Side,  
 And when I do, I now that he will bless me,  
 For my wish to lay an ever brighter wreath, a more enduring  
     tribute, if I might,  
 Across the brow of his sweet wife whose patient smile of faith  
     and holy resignation  
 Break up the fountains of my soul,  
 And make me long to cover all her path with flowers from a  
     heavenly garden,  
 Whose fragrance and whose beauty would be as pure and  
     fadeless  
 As the diadem which angles wear.

APPENDIX VIII

FAREWELL SPEECH

of

BRIGADIER-GENERAL  
RICHARD W. YOUNG

to

MEMBERS OF THE 145 FIELD ARTILLERY REGIMENT

CAMP KEARNEY

May 6, 1918

## DEPARTURE SPEECH

Before 145th Field Artillery Regiment  
May 3, 1918, Camp Kearney, California

In relinquishing command of the 145th Field Artillery, it would neither be consistent with my own feelings, nor I believe, with the expectations of the regiment for me to remain silent.

Upon the declaration of war by the United States, it appeared to me as an imperative duty, by reason of my past experiences and the vital character of the present crises, again to cast my lot with the Colors. It was my happy fortune to be appointed by Governor Bamberger to the command of this organization.

It is the consensus of official opinion that you have made an enviable record. That record, all are confident, is but a faint indication of the greater honors that must and will come to you through the real test and ordeal of war.

I am not so egotistical as to arrogate to myself any undue, or much credit, for your achievements--these are to be ascribed primarily to the high average of your soldierly characteristic, and, secondarily, to the quick and full response that you have made in the instruction imparted and discipline enjoined by the trained officers and men of the First Separate Battery, the efficient artillery nucleus of the regiment, and by the experienced officers and men of the cavalry and other organizations of our National Guard, and in no small degree to the dominating intelligence of Brigadier-General Lyon, our esteemed and popular brigade commander.

Among the members of the regiment are numbers of men who I count as personal friends--the acquaintances, some of them, of many years, including a handful of beloved compatriots with whom I served in the Spanish-American War and the Philippine insurrection. Many of the officers and men of the regiment are sons of brothers or other relatives of old time companions, while still others are from families with whose names and history I have long been familiar. It has been my constant regret that conditions have made it impossible for me to make a close personal acquaintanceship with each of you--that opportunity, as to many of you, may happily present itself in future days.

To the casual observer, the soldier is without identity, a mere item of a mass of entirely similar beings; but to him who has the good fortune to mingle closely with the troops, the soldier emerges as an individual, distinguished, often, by such qualities as lend value and charm to the race. In the mass and before acquaintance, the soldier may not seem to be intrinsically of very great value, but when you come to know him, you find out that he is worth a million dollars of any man's money. Then you understand why he is the very apple of his parents' eye, and why he has been able to grapple friend to him with hooks of steel. Knowing this well, I regret not knowing you better.

At the present moment I am not advised as to what my immediate assignment to duty may be, but most devoutly hope it may be to the command

of the 65th Artillery Brigade, composed, as it is, not only of our own regiment, but of other organizations whose excellence is attested and whose membership is of the highest type of American manhood.

We are enlisted and hope for the privilege of playing an adequate part in a great cause. I was told yesterday of a man who, after the delay of months, has at last donned the love drab because he cannot see how he would ever be able to explain to his son his failure to enlist. I am tempted to quote a few lines from King Henry V, as applicable to you and to the situation, if, perchance, we shall be permitted to play the higher part in this historic drama:

If it be a "sin to covet honour,"  
 You are the "most offending" soul alive.  
 He that outlives this day, and comes safe home,  
 Will yearly on the vigil feast his neighbours;  
 Then will he strip his sleeve and show his scars;  
 ...He'll remember with advantages  
 What feats he did that day; then shall our names,  
 Familiar in the mouths as household words,  
 Be in their flowing cups freshly remember'd-  
 We few, we happy few, we band of brothers;  
 And gentlemen in England, now a-bed,  
 Shall think themselves accur'd they were not here,  
 And hold their manhoods cheap while any speaks,  
 That fought with us upon Saint Crispin's day.

In conclusion, let me assure you of my undying pride in and affection for you, and adjure you to be true to the ideals that have characterized and distinguished your forefathers, and that, thus far, have been conspicuous in your own records, namely; obedience to constituted authority, dependability, sobriety, cleanliness of life, stoutness of heart, uncapitulating loyalty.

Richard W. Young

APPENDIX IX

LETTER

BRIGADIER-GENERAL  
RICHARD W. YOUNG

to

MRS. RICHARD W. YOUNG and FAMILY

CAMP DE SOUGE, FRANCE

November 21, 1918



Camp de Souge, (Gironde) November 21st, 1918

Dear Ones at Home:-

I returned last evening from a journey, aggregating about 1600 miles, which, no matter how long I may live, must stand out as one of the most vitally absorbing experiences of my life. Believing that you will be interested in a detailed relation of those experiences, I shall describe them with such particularity as time may permit and my memory and powers of description will render possible.

The time occupied by the trip extended from Saturday, November 9th, 1918 to Wednesday, November 20th.

My companion throughout the entire trip was Major Robert I. Bentley, Jr., of San Jose, California, the Brigade Adjutant, Private George B. Roth, Headquarters Detachment, 65th F. A. Brigade, of Stockton, California, my chauffeur. Captain Elmer E. Chase, 144th Field Artillery, accompanied us from Is-sur-Tille to, and along the front and back to Paris, whence he went by train to Clermont-Ferrand, the station of his regiment.

In order to permit you the more graphically to visualize our experiences, I will attempt a brief description of the people of France and a bird's eye view of the Country.

Ever since our arrival, our curiosity has been aroused as to the effects of the war upon the people of this devoted country. The villages and towns of the rural districts are oppressively deserted - I speak now of the Southern and Central portions of France which have not been ravaged by war. As we ran through a village extending for a half mile along the road, we would see not more than 2 or 3 women and children on the streets and many of the houses seemed to be unoccupied, their windows being tightly barred with shutters. We would travel for miles along the roadways without meeting a vehicle or individual. Automobiles have almost ceased to be operated in France for purposes of pleasure, and such riding as is possible is done in funny little carts drawn by ponies or donkeys infinitesimally small.

We have seen no evidences of poverty in France, at least none comparable with the rags and distress of some of the larger English cities, and yet in view of the unprecedented prices of food and clothing it is a marvel how the people are able to live at all. On working days, all seem to be comfortably clad while on Sundays and holidays, they appear in excellent clothing usually of stylish appearance. The children are particularly well dressed as a rule. One is struck with the healthy appearance of the young people of France - this is notably true of the girls, who are round and robust and not characterized by the appearance of frailness that marks so many of our American girls. There seemed to be no young men anywhere in France who are not wearing the uniform of a soldier. The civilian population is made up of women, children and older men - it seems impossible that France could have called into service any substantial number of men in addition to those already under arms.

The reception accorded to Americans by the entire population is cordial to the utmost. Men, women and children seem desirous of rendering every possible service to "Les Americaines". Should you stop for a moment at a road crossing to inquire the way, they spring to your assistance, and the children climb onto the running board of your auto to answer your inquiries. Speaking of the children of France, you could not fail to be impressed with their beauty, their brightness and their politeness. They seem to have none of that rudeness that characterizes so many of our own children. As we fly along the roads or through the streets, they universally greet us with a wave of the hand, a shout of welcome or with the salutation of "Goodbye". It has been a matter of frequent comment among us, that the girls and women of France bear a much more striking resemblance to our own women and girls than do those of England - you see very many faces throughout France that would not strike you as being foreign in any part of America. It is generally agreed, I believe, that the French girls and women possess a higher average of good looks than the fair sex of any other country, including our own. The men are considerably foreign in their appearance. All men, women and children, are vivacious, happy and sociable.

It is to be noted with great regret, however, that the morals of the people seem to be low. Their illustrated periodicals contain pictures and stories that would not be permitted to pass through the mails in the United States. Their theatrical performances and their ordinary conversation, I understand, permit, all too frequently, suggestions of immorality that would be shocking to our sense of propriety. Prostitution prevails to an unbelievable extent. Young girls and women, many of them in mourning, almost kidnap you on the streets of their cities and even their smaller towns. A very large proportion of French girls and even women are flirtatious in their conduct and attitude toward men. France will never be rehabilitated unless she abandons licentiousness and develops the family spirit.

French architecture lacks diversity. Every farm is a walled enclosure around the four sides of which are the residence, sheds and stables and within which are the animals and fowls of the farm, and the great piles of manure without which the productiveness of the ancient soil of France could not be maintained. In the villages and towns, as well as in the cities, the houses are built in continuous lines, wall to wall, along the narrow streets. Sidewalks have hardly room enough to allow two persons to walk side by side. There is scarcely a porch in France, nor a lawn or a bed of flowers. The windows have great shutters which for some inexplicable cause are usually closed and locked. All structures are of stone, roofs are tiled, and what their edifices lack in attractiveness they make up in solidity.

I must not forget to mention the French bed. I have slept in hotels in cities, towns and villages and in private houses, and every where the French bed is a wonderful institution, composed of a box mattress with perhaps a wool mattress and always a featherbed, with wonderful linen, and on top of all a down comforter, sometimes as thick as a featherbed and always, seemingly, too small for the purpose for which it was designed. After sleeping on these most excellent beds, and in view of the fact that we spend such a large portion of our lives in bed, I have concluded that perhaps we are too careless in America as to the quality of our beds. I am impressed with the fact that money cannot be better spent than in supplying beds equally in comfort to those of the French.

As regards the food, there has never been any restriction on meat since we have been in France; bread seems to be limited and even American officers and soldiers, when traveling, are required to produce bread tickets in order to be served with that necessary article of food. Potatoes are scarce, while other vegetables seem to be plentiful, but all are extremely high in price. Butter is strictly forbidden to be served and sugar cannot be obtained in the hotels, saccharine, in liquid form, being furnished in lieu thereof. We had a costly but an amusing experience in Paris on Sunday. Major Bentley ordered an apple and I called his attention to the fact that the price was 5 francs (90¢) per apple, and I, unthinkingly, ordered some grapes, which are one of the prolific products of the country, believing that the price would not be prohibitive and ate two small bunches - at a cost of 7 francs, (about \$1.26). We had ham, french fried potatoes, bread without butter and coffee or chocolate and the cost of the meal to each of us was approximately \$3.00.

The interiors of the residences and hotels of the better class are, of course, very "Frenchy" in the large number of gilt framed mirrors, ornamental clocks, Louis XIV furniture, etc. They all lack in that hominess that characterizes our own homes and hotels. Baths exist here and there but not in the same frequency as in America. We found one hotel in Paris where baths could be obtained only on Thursdays and Fridays on account of the scarcity of coal.

The roads of France must have been wonderful before the American invasion and the war. They are usually about 20 feet wide and are macadamized; they are lined with a row, sometimes two rows, of trees on either side and are curbed with rock almost throughout. My splendid 7 cylinder Cadillac would run along on many of these roads almost without a tremor at 60 miles per hour. But the French and American army trucks and the absence of laborers have done much to diminish the condition of these roads. While, as I stated above, there is very little private traffic along these highways there is an enormous quantity of army transportation moving in all directions and everywhere, as you contemplate our travels through France you must picture to yourself interminable convoys of trucks and other automobile transportation of various kinds; we would meet lines of 3 ton and 5 ton trucks, French and American, loaded or empty; long lines of Ford touring cars and trucks; ambulances almost without number; long lines of artillery of various sizes with their limbers and caissons; baggage wagons, with huge loads of miscellaneous supplies drawn by American mules or French horses; rolling kitchens, either of the substantial French type or the lighter American style. In nearly every city we found American soldiers acting as military police directing traffic at the crossroads. Morning, noon and evening American soldiers lined up for their meals. It is said that the custom that prevails in the American service, of soldiers falling in for "chow" was the cause of some of the heaviest casualties suffered by the American arms at the front; that instead of going occasionally one by one to the kitchen, as do the French and English, they could not depart from their custom of lining up, a formation that was readily observable by the enemy who would open fire at once upon them with their batteries. Some cities seemed to be reserved to the French soldiers and others to the American, while in still other places soldiers of both nationalities were quartered. The French have not adopted any neutral color for their uniforms. The French soldiers are always dressed in the light sky blue, whether behind or on the line.

There are few mountains of any size in France, except along the eastern and northeastern boundary. The remainder of the country is made up usually of rolling hills with valleys along which run their numerous and beautiful streams. Every inch of land seems to be cultivated. Patches of forest exist, through government requirement, I imagine. All over France, here and there, are chateaux of wondrous beauty surrounded by great estates in the highest state of cultivation. The French have a way of building cities and towns along the crests of ridges and on the summits of hills. I remember distinctly the city of Langres, a city of considerable size and importance in the center of France, that crowns the point of a ridge that extends several hundred feet above the surrounding valleys. It is evidently a city of the Middle Ages and is surrounded with a very impressive moss grown wall that must be fifty feet high in places, capped, here and there, with towers, and flanked with bastions. Viewed through the woods that occupied the lower slopes of the hill, this sky scraping city is wonderfully picturesque and attractive.

-----oOo-----

It has been the policy of General Pershing to send the Commanding Generals, the Adjutants and the Operation Officers of Brigades to the front for purposes of observation and instruction. Under that policy, I received telegraphic orders from Adjutant General Davis, of the American Expeditionary Forces, to proceed with my Adjutant by automobile to the Headquarters of The Second Army, starting after November 9th, the date of the completion of our six weeks course of artillery training at Camp de Souge. Inasmuch as, however, we finally completed our course by the firing of the barrage on Saturday morning, I made arrangements to leave immediately after luncheon on that day, November 9th.

We ran out of the sand and dismal country surrounding Souge, passed the cemetery wherein 14 members of the Utah Regiment lie buried as the victims of Spanish flu, through the great city of Bordeaux, now nearly double its usual size, across the splendid bridge spanning the River Garonne, over the low hills northeasterly to the city of Libourne, where we crossed the river Dordogne. The country through which we were then passing is the most famous wine producing region of France, the home of many of the favorite vintages of the connoisseurs. Our journey Saturday and all day Sunday, generally speaking, was in a northeasterly direction. We passed through Perigueux and stopped for the night at Limoges. This is the city wherein the famous Haviland China is manufactured. At dinner I saw Lieutenant Colonel Binford, who, as Captain, was quartermaster of the 20th Infantry at Fort Douglas at the time that we were encamped there. We took breakfast at a "Canteen", operated by the ladies of the American Red Cross. Here we had a substantial American breakfast, including oatmeal and ham and eggs at a trifling cost. The cashier was an extremely good looking and interesting girl from Denver, Colorado, who leaned over and informed me that she was very much impressed with the star on my shoulder. Mrs. R. W. Young, who believes me and all other men to be consummate flirts, will not be altogether surprised at my reply, which was, that I was very much impressed with her.

We made an early start and ran through a most delightful country along some of what must be the best roads in the world. We

climbed around innumerable curves to the top of a high ridge upon which was situated the beautiful city of Chateauroux. But it was with this city as with all French centers of population. Distance lends enchantment to the view.

Afar off with the white walls and the red tile roofs of the buildings, embowered amidst trees and surrounded by endless green fields, a French town possesses infinite beauty and charm; but, alas! when you enter its confines, the charm is largely dissipated, since, as before explained, there is an absence of flowers and lawns and front yards and porches and such accessories as make so greatly for the attractiveness of a city, while, in addition, your nose is saluted with the rank smells that arise from the open sewerage of the streets. You are certain that you have escaped typhoid in France only because you have been subjected to inoculations against it. Probably the explanation of the fact that all Frenchmen are not dead with the typhoid lies in the fact that through generations of living under such conditions they have arrived at immunity from attack.

We took luncheon at another Red Cross Canteen "manned" by American girls, at the city of Bourges. Here is located the second greatest cathedral in France, first being the war scarred edifice at Reims.

Continuing we passed through the insignificant little village of La Guerche, which, until a few days ago, was the headquarters of General Strong and the 40th Division; and through Nevers, a substantial city situated on the beautiful river Loire which we here crossed. We found a resting place for the night at Dijon, also a city of considerable size and beauty. We stopped at the Hotel des Cloches, where I had a beautiful homelike room, with bath - for which, needless to say, I paid a very handsome price.

The next morning we ran over to Is-sur-Tille, the headquarters of the Second Army as we had been incorrectly informed. The censorship in France, even among the military forces, has been so rigid that it has been impossible or difficult for us to obtain accurate information, or any information at all, respecting the location of troops or individuals. While making inquiries as to our further progress, we ran into Captain Elmer E. Chase, who, as adjutant of the 144th Field Artillery, had been ordered to the front for observation. I invited him to accompany me on the trip which, of course, he was delighted to do. Captain Chase is a gentleman of the first water, whom it was a great pleasure to have with us. He is said to have one of the most attractive homes at Carmel, near Monterey. He and Major Bentley have been life long companions and are devoted friends.

So, with a roll of bedding on both running boards and one in front of the rear seat and our hand baggage, gas masks and steel helmets on the seat with the chauffeur we continued our journey, through Langres, Neufchateau to Toul, the headquarters of Lieutenant General Bullard, Commander in Chief of the Second Army. We arrived at Toul just as the armistice took effect. The front lines were only 4 or 5 miles away and, had we stopped our automobile for a moment we could have heard the last shots of the Great War. The "Place" of the city was filled with great cheering crowds of civilians and French and American soldiers; an American band came down a main street playing "Tipperary", followed by scores of

American soldiers each with a kiddy on his shoulder. I called in to see General Bullard, who was a plebe at West Point when I was a cadet captain. He told his staff how high he considered my position then to be. I reminded him that those were the days when I ranked him. Now, however, he holds with Generals Liggett and Dickman, both West Point contemporaries of mine, the exalted rank of Lieutenant General.

That afternoon we ran out to the front lines at Saizerais, the headquarters of the corps. It was at this town that a day or two later, I saw Dan Spencer, now a corporal connected with the Intelligence Department of the army. The boy is the picture of health and has gained greatly in weight. He has been in France for 14 months and no doubt has seen very much hard and hazardous service, but has not reached a commission because of the fact that he has been serving with a French ambulance unit. A day or two later, at Bar-le-Duc, I saw Mr. O'Brien, the coal man of Salt Lake City, who likewise had served with the French ambulance corps but who had succeeded in landing a commission as 2nd Lieutenant in the Sanitary Department of the United States Army. He wears the Croix de Guerre.

From Saizerais we ran through Manonville, Noviant, Bernecourt, Ramboucourt, Bouconville and Aprement to Woinville. The last named town was the headquarters of the 4th corps, commanded by General Muir. Here I found Brigadier General Briant S. Wells, with whom I made an appointment for luncheon the following day. There being no accommodations in the vicinity we ran back, some 20 miles, to Commercy, where I was able to secure a small room in the roof, my companions sleeping in their bed rolls on the office floor of the hotel. We took time by the forelock, however, and reserved rooms for the following night anticipating that our plans would permit us to return.

Our journey from Toul to Woinville, was our first introduction to the actual scenes of war. We saw acres and acres, miles and miles of wire entanglements; also interminable infantry trenches and innumerable gun emplacements, many of which were still occupied. Here we first found camouflaged roads, hundreds of miles of which we were destined to see throughout our journey. Traffic along these roads was hidden from the observation of the enemy either by willows or small branches woven into a mat 10 or 12 feet high, or by a line of gunnysacking of equal height. Where Germans had had possession of the road, the camouflage lay between them and the French, while the French, of course, constructed their screen between them and the enemy; in some places the roads had passed from the control of one side to the other and then both sides of the roads were found to be screened. In other places attempts were made to prevent aerial observation of the roads by suspending pieces of camouflage much like the flies of a theatrical stage. It was during this afternoon's drive that we first found villages and towns that had suffered from bombardments. Nearly everyone of the towns that I have mentioned was completely ruined, not so much as one building remaining within which a family could find shelter. Yet, in nearly all of them we encountered groups of soldiers, usually American, since our journey was confined largely to the American sectors. These had cleared the debris from the streets in order to make them possible and were making themselves as comfortable as possible amidst the scenes of desolation in which they were stationed.

On the 12th we returned to Woinville, and under the guidance of a lieutenant placed at our disposal by General Cruickshank, we proceeded northward through Buxerulles, Buxierres, Heudicourt, Nonsart, Pannes, Beney, St. Benoit-en-Woevre to Woel. All these towns were along the front of American occupation, and the Germans were only a mile or so away. Near the last named town we left our automobile and went into the Bois-de-Rau-dronville where we examined a number of long 155mm guns, manned by Americans, that had had the privilege of playing a part during the final days of the great drama. We walked down through the woods toward the German lines, our automobile being unable to proceed on account of shell holes in the road, and at our outer picket lines discovered groups of German soldiers and officers, who had walked over from the Hindenburg line only a half mile away. We were informed that numbers of our own men and some officers, even though intercourse was forbidden, had gone over to the German lines. These soldiers were well clothed and appeared to have been well fed. They were very military in their bearing, much more so than our own men who happened to be in the vicinity. I talked with one of the German soldiers who had spent sometime in England. He was aware of the fact that "Wilhelm" had abdicated and that a Republic was in the process of formation, but he was not an enthusiastic republican; said he did not know which he would prefer Kaiser or a Republic. The German officers here and elsewhere, wherever we saw them, stood or strutted around with the insufferable air of superiority that made one wish, almost, that the war might have been prolonged until they might be properly humbled.

I fear that the German people will derive nothing but pride from their exploits in this war. Though defeated they are by no means humiliated. It has required substantially the entire world to defeat them - such will be the flattering function that they will take to their souls. They will attribute defeat to economic causes, the lack of food and materials, and to internal disorders. They will claim that if the German people had remained true to themselves and united they might still have won the war even though, Bulgaria, Turkey and Austria had fallen away - in other words, that defeat came to them not externally but internally; but in making this contention, they will overlook the fact that their economic distress and other internal dissensions were the results of the successful war waged against them by their enemies. Though their territory remains practically uninvaded, their defeat is none the less certain and complete. Their surrender of materials of warfare has made treachery and the renewal of the war impossible. It may be set down as certain that the final treaty of peace will impose penalties upon the German people that will render them the economic slaves of the Allied Governments for many years yet to come.

We ran over to St. Mihiel - a city of considerable size, largely destroyed, where we found General Richmond P. Davis, commanding the American Artillery that was serving with the 17th French Division. General Davis with his Brigade had left Camp de Souge after we arrived there but through a determination to get into the controversy and by "butting in" as he expressed it, almost without orders, he succeeded in having his Brigade participate for about 3 weeks in the engagements around the St. Mihiel Salient.

In going from Woinville to St. Mihiel, we found innumerable lumber barracks constructed by the Germans. These were located on the southerly slopes of high hills and were thus protected from the fire of the

French. These buildings were very comfortable - in some cases they were ornamented with rustic porches and the interior of the rooms were plastered and tinted. In the rear, were deep dugouts for protection from cannon fire.

We spent the night again in Commercy. We were now on the Mouse.

The next day we ran eastward to Toul where I had a pleasant call on Major General Lassiter, the chief of Artillery for the Second Army. He impresses me as a man of superior ability and great activity, who must have come to the front had the war been prolonged. Here we met Captain Williams, of my staff and Captain Ward, Adjutant 145th Field Artillery, who had just arrived. These officers were assigned to the several Brigades of the Second Army and had excellent opportunities of observation. Lieutenant Wolcott, of my staff, and several other officers who arrived a day later were sent back to their stations under orders from G.H.Q. not to permit any further observers to visit the front. Just as we reached the outskirts of Toul an American aeroplane fell to the ground near the road. On arriving at the spot we saw the body of the aviator carried on a stretcher from his ship.

We ran over to the Moselle and down through Mirpache to Pont-a-Mousson, a city that is partly on one side and partly on the other side of the river. One span of the connecting bridge had been destroyed, but replaced with a temporary structure of doubtful strength, which we drove over without knowing that it was confined exclusively to foot passengers. Here Major Bentley found Captain Moveus, a Fort Sill classmate, now adjutant of a colored artillery regiment that had seen considerable arduous service in the recent campaign. With him and a Lieutenant Benton we went to the top of Cote-de-Mousson - a conical hill several hundred feet high. This hill is crowned with the ruins of a castle of the Middle Ages. Fragments of the walls of the citadel at the top of the hill still remains, while encircling the crown of the hill below are numerous other walls whereip, presumably, the baronial followers found a home and refuge. A statue of Joan of Arc, at the top of a tall white monument now caps the scene. The hill is honeycombed with tunnels ending in chambers from which through heavy concrete slots the entire surrounding country may be overlooked. This hill has never been in possession of the Germans and has proven to be an invaluable possession of the French and the Americans in their operations in the vicinity. Appreciating its military importance, the Germans have repeatedly shelled the spot and the effects of their cannonading are visible on all hands.

Fortunately the day of our visit was unusually clear and from the top of the hill we had a clear out view of the city of Metz only 12 miles away.

The American troops had been in conflict with the Boche right at the foot of the hill for a number of weeks, and we saw the graves of American soldiers scattered here and there, 18 or 20 having received burial a half hour before our arrival. Descending the hill, we approached the German lines and as it happens the National Boundary, our progress being through several villages that had suffered so greatly that it was almost impossible to distinguish where the streets had once existed. Here we



learned that some of our soldiers were in contact with the Germans just ahead of where we were compelled through shell holes to leave our automobile and that they were securing automatic pistols, helmets and other souvenirs, by the exchange of slickers and sweaters and cigarettes. Walking down in the direction indicated we saw a colored soldier whom I asked: "Are there any Germans around here?" He replied, "No suh, no suh, dey is no Germans heah, we has permission to keep 'em out." This reminds me of an experience we had that evening on going into the city of Nancy. It was dark and just as we were about to enter upon the bridge a big negro soldier loomed up in front of the car and waved his hand for us to stop. "Has you a pass?" I told him that we had none, and he stated: "Well, no one but a general s'allowed to go across here without a pass", whereupon I informed him that I was a General Officer and he thereupon exclaimed: "I begs youah pawdon suh; am dese youah substitutes?" referring to Major Bentley and Captain Chase; I told him they were and so he let us pass.

Near the Cote-de-Mousson we went out on the main road along the river where we found our engineer troops filling up large holes that had been dug underneath the road without destroying the surface as traps for tanks and other military vehicles that might pass. It was here, at our extreme outpost, that I saw a group of German officers and among them one wearing a pair of glasses, who was smoking a cigar with such an air of contemptuous superiority as he gazed upon our soldiers filling up a tank trap that I sincerely regretted that the war had terminated without his having learned its lessons. I confess to an itching desire to "boot" him. [pen insert by the General]

Nancy is the old capitol of Lorraine, which was formerly a Duchy independent of France. The last Duke left his crown to his father-in-law Stanislaus, the deposed King of Poland, who very greatly beautified the city, notably in the design and construction of the Public Square, which is one of the architectural gems of Europe. On one side of the Square is the Hotel De Ville. On two other sides are buildings of uniform appearance while on the 4th side is a lower structure, all of great architectural beauty. Connecting the buildings all around the Square are great iron gates and fences, the work of John Lamour, said to have been the world's greatest iron worker. His work also adorns the balustrades around the windows of the Square. We had a modest dinner at "Les Oiseaux", which cost us over \$6.00 each, so great is the cost of food at the hotels and restaurants of France - a rum omelet cost \$3.60 - a fair indication of prevailing prices.

From Nancy, where we stayed all night we ran through Toul back to St. Mihiel where we had luncheon with General Davis a gentleman whom it is always a pleasure to meet. From here we continued down the Mouse through Genicourt and Maudainville to Verdun - the city around which this Great War has staged its bloodiest tragedies. The city is not altogether, though very greatly, destroyed. It was at the time of our visit the scene of the greatest possible military activity. As we approached its walls we passed innumerable trains and troops, and within its borders thousands of Americans and French soldiers. The citadel is a great hill comprising many acres of ground through which, beneath 100 feet of dirt and the barracks and houses that crown the top, are innumerable chambers and passages, used as headquarters for the commandant, as canteens, kitchens, mess halls, hospitals and sleeping apartments, these we were shown through by an officer detailed for the purpose by the commanding officer. On the day

of our arrival at Verdun and the next day we encountered thousands of soldiers belonging to the 26th American Division, formerly commanded by Major General Clarence Edwards. This Division had seen hard and bloody service at the front and was now returning to the rear. The men bore every evidence of the terrible strain which they had undergone. Our attention was directed, a few days earlier, to the fact that every soldier who had seen service in the battle lines told the story of his experiences chiefly in the hollowness of his eyes. We found this to be true and every man that we passed in this battle torn Division plainly told in his eyes and on his face the tragic story.

There being no accommodations near by, we returned to Bar-le-Duc for meals and accommodations for the night. On our way we stopped at Souilly, where we found Lieutenant General Liggett, the Commander of the First Army, and next to General Pershing himself the most conspicuous figure of the war, who was three years ahead of me at West Point. The soldiers had made a spotless town of Souilly. The General handed me his own private map showing the location of the several corps and divisions of his command. We found rooms and had meals at a large hotel maintained by the Y.M.C.A. in Bar-le-Duc. A Japanese Major General with his son were guests at the hotel.

The next morning we returned to Verdun. Here, the commandant of the citadel was kind enough to detail an adjutant to accompany us out to the forts along the north of the city. This officer, whose name I do not recall, has been in and around Verdun throughout the war. He was stationed for two years in Fort de Souville, to which he first conducted us. This is one of a series of forts crowning hills at a distance of from 3 to 6 or 8 miles from the city. This fort now resembles a heap of rubbish. Every wall or building that formerly entered into its composition has been battered down. It may be said that neither within this fort nor, indeed, at any place for miles around, is there a square foot of ground that is not included within a shell hole. The greater majority of these holes were made by the German 77mm gun and are usually 5 or 6 feet in diameter and 2 or 3 feet in depth, but interspersed with these little fellows are the great holes made by heavy guns - some of these are fully 20 feet and 8 to 10 feet in depth. In Fort de Souville there remained only two disappearing steel turrets with their 155mm guns still in good working order. The turret within which this gun is located rises 4 or 5 feet when the gun is discharged, the turret then returning to its resting place while the gun is reloaded. The massive steel plates crowning these turrets showed numerous glancing hits by massive projectiles.

From here, we drove over to Fort Douaumont, the scene of the greatest and bloodiest struggles of the war. On our way over, we discovered that the intervening country is a continuous cemetery. The crosses of dead French and German soldiers appear on every hand. It is a tragic circumstance that many men were buried in the banks of the trenches right where they fell - it would have been impossible under the stream of shot and shell then flying to have buried them elsewhere. It is said that tons of thousands of men are buried with no mark to indicate their final resting places. Our guide informed us that during the course of the war the French had suffered over 400,000 casualties around Verdun and the Germans 600,000 - nearly half of these figures represent men actually killed.

Douaumont like its sister forts, is torn beyond recognition. Here and there, in and around Verdun, are cemeteries within which may be seen in long impressive lines the crosses of thousand of dead French soldiers each patriotically adorned with the tri-color of France.

Leaving Verdun we proceeded down the Meuse through Bras and Charnay to a desolate and absolutely forsaken spot where was nailed the sign "This was Forges". From here through Bethincourt, Malancourt, Montfaucon, Nantillois, Cunel and Bantheville to Dun-sur-Meuse, we passed through absolutely the most war stricken region that we have seen in France, excepting only the country surrounding the forts at Verdun. Every town is a heap of ruins and rubbish. Every tree has been cut down by cannon fire. Nearly every square rod of ground shows the effect of cannon fire. An American aeroplane with its nose sunk into the ground marked the spot where some American aviator and possibly his accompanying observer met their final fates. A number of French tanks, with their 75mm and machine guns still in place were the obvious victims of German cannon fire. Rows of graves near which, marked merely with the bayonet of the soldier, indicated where these brave tank men had found a final resting place. This ground was not only the scene of terrific conflicts between the Germans and the French but was the axis of advance of the American troops during the past few weeks. American graves, single or in groups, were encountered everywhere, marked frequently with a cross but often merely with a stick or a bayonet. On this cross or stick was the dead man's steel helmet and his identification tag. In a little clump of bushes near a German machine gun emplacement was a piece of board upon which was written: "Here lie seven unidentified German soldiers". German and American steel helmets were scattered here and there for miles and miles, several of which we brought back as souvenirs. Accompanying these sights were wrecked guns and caissons and limbers and trucks, while all over France, wherever war has raged, may be found cannon ammunition in the greatest profusion; down on the Marne, where the first battle was fought, German ammunition still may be found in enormous quantities.

The extent toward which the Americans have contributed to the desolation of the region which I am describing may be understood when I state that General Allen told us that his brigade of artillery shot 69000 rounds in 24 hours; this would cost, I imagine, not less than \$2,000,000.00.

We found Major General H. T. Allen, a West Point class mate of mine, at Mouzay. He is in command of the 90th Division and informs me that his Division suffered substantially 7500 casualties. He was located in a house formerly occupied by German soldiers as a club, as appears by a German sign on the building. In passing I may mention, that all of that part of France that has been occupied by the Germans throughout the war contains signs in German giving road directions, names of streets, etc. General Allen's chief signal officer has been Lieutenant Colonel Nolan, who served with us at Camp Kearny. Major Andrews, a grandson of General Schofield, is on his staff; his chief of staff being Colonel Kingman, son of General Kingman, now deceased, a classmate of Colonel Willard Young. We remained all night in Mouzay having been billeted in the homes of some of the French people who had remained there throughout the war. The good people with whom I stayed described how the Crown Prince rode by, horse or automobile, nearly every day down through the village from Stenay, his place of residence, to the battle front at Verdun. They had seen the Kaiser, the King of Bavaria and nearly all of the great German soldiers pass their homes during the war.

They did not picture the Germans as being excessively cruel but complained that they compelled all the inhabitants to work at the miserable pittance of about two cents per hour. For some unaccountable reason the returning Germans shelled the town with ordinary and gas shells after evacuating it and before the arrival of any American troops. General Allen carries a little electric plant, run by gasoline, with his headquarters with which he provides a small circuit of electric lights for his headquarters.

The next morning we visited Stenay and saw the chateau in which the Crown Prince lived for a period of more than six months while he was directing the operations of his army at Verdun. We attempted to go northward on the right bank of the river to Sedan but were stopped by an American sentry who informed us that his orders were to prevent anyone from crossing over to the German lines just behind. In view of this we returned to Sassey, crossed the Meuse and proceeded northward to Sedan through Beaumont, Rancourt, Angecourt and Remilly but at the last named place learned from the officers of the Algerian French troops that we could not proceed along the river but would be compelled to take back into the interior certain bridges having been destroyed. Our interview with these officers was very amusing. Inasmuch as we attempted to explain our object in French, to which they listened with great patience and replied in impeccable English. Through this country we saw a great many German gardens, principally of cabbage, some of it red cabbage. We also saw thousands of German prisoners on their way to Sedan to form a part of the grand triumphal entry into that city which was scheduled for the following day.

We were not permitted to enter the city of Sedan but obtained a view of it from the opposite bank. We were particularly interested in the city of Sedan, not merely because of the part which it has played in this war but chiefly of the fact that it is the place where Napoleon III and his army surrendered to the Germans nearly 50 years ago.

It was at this point that we came in contact with a great number of returning French prisoners. They were oddly clad and smiling their contentment on returning to France. Without exception, however, they were all thin and pale and showed indications of lack of proper nourishment and the strain undergone in the German prison camps. I should estimate they numbered 5000 who constituted a large part of the earliest French army.

From Sedan we proceeded southeasterly through Le Chesne, Vouzieres, Jouvillotte to the city of Reims, which we reached just at Sunset. For four years Germans have been within shelling distance of this city. The fields are scarred with trenches and encumbered with endless meshes of barbed wire. The roads are all camouflaged. Here and there, we saw German and French trenches in the closest touch with each other. From the hill over which we approached the city, it appeared to be a most attractive spot, but as we rode into its streets, we found nothing but desolation; not a person moved within those ruined precincts. From the distance the city appeared to be almost intact, but we discovered that there is not a house within its limits that is not completely ruined - except as to 13 buildings which in some degree are susceptible of habitation. Block after block as we proceeded along the street car tracks from which cars have long since disappeared, and on either hand, as far as we could see up and down the cross streets, there was nothing but ruin and desolation -

every roof was shattered and every wall was pierced. The inhabitants had flown to other parts of France, and that which five years ago must have been one of France's most populous, beautiful and attractive cities, is now, it seems certain, destroyed beyond the possibility of repair. One speculates as to the future of this city. For my part, I cannot see that it can ever be restored. Has it in fact ended its career as a city or will those who have called it home and love its memories return to restore and rebuild it with infinite cost and labor?

Near the cathedral we found a few soldiers and civilians there, as we were, to gaze at the beauties of this wonderful structure and to mourn over its profanation. I have seen many of the most sublime and beautiful buildings of the world but without hesitation I declare the Reims Cathedral, even in its part ruined condition, to be the most sublime of them all. Fortunately the front of the building is opposite the German lines, and so far as I was able to see, has not suffered a single shot. The rear and sides received many hits and the two towers are considerably injured. I am happy in the belief that the building can be restored - I trust that under the treaty of peace this will be required of Germany. I must add, however, that in view of the great destruction that the rest of the city has suffered, it appears to me that the Germans have not deliberately shot to destroy the Cathedral - that they have made it their target from time to time is no doubt certain, but I feel assured that if they had deliberately set out to demolish the building they could have done so during the four years that it has been within easy range of their guns.

The Cathedral is impressive in its great proportions; its grace and symmetry are harmonious beyond description while its carvings and finer work are exquisitely beautiful. The softened light of the setting sun added an indescribable charm to the scene. There can never be erased from my memory the spectacle of this noble building to which cling so many of the historic memories of France. How superbly this building must have dominated the scene throughout its long history of peace! How still more sublimely do its shattered walls and pinnacles overlook the melancholy ruins and desolate fields that now surround it.

We spent the night at Epernay taking dinner at a charming little hotel where a meal costs six and one half francs, that cost precisely double the price in Paris the next day.

The following day we ran down the Marne into Paris passing on the way through the battlefield of Chateau Thierry where the American troops distinguished themselves, and where we found innumerable evidences of recent warfare, including the melancholy sight of numerous American graves.

We arrived in Paris on a historic day, that of the removal from the monuments erected in the Place de La Concorde of the crepe that has adorned these monuments ever since the Franco-Prussian War. All Paris was on the streets throughout the day and the greater portion of the night, aeroplanes swept the sky and even skimmed along the Seine. The procession containing 150,000 people marched from the Arc de Triumph to the Place de La Concorde wearing wreaths. Many veterans of the former war here in the procession, gray haired and gray bearded like the veterans of our Civil War. The joy of the people was intense and unbounded. The Americans and the English joined with the French in enthusiasm. The Americans were particularly the objects of French admiration. Our little party was

surrounded on several occasions by groups of young men and young women, dancing a sort of ring-around-the-roses, much to the delight of the spectators and somewhat to our own confusion. We learned afterwards - and not before much to our regret - that the customary way of breaking the circle is to kiss the girls. We were each covered with confetti. The hundreds perhaps thousands of German cannon had been parked here and there throughout the city but the people helped themselves to them and the next day they were scattered all over Paris.

I called on Colonel Charley Stanton, who is the Chief Disbursing Officer for the entire American Forces - he tells me that "Mollie" his wife is in Los Angeles.

Returning I find that General Connor had become Chief of Staff at Tours and that General Walsh of my class was in command at Bordeaux. General Connor desires to be remembered to Mrs. Young and the girls.

Our return trip was made in two days, Tours being our intermediate resting place. We left Captain Chase at Paris, where he was able to take a train for his station at Clermont-Ferrand.

Thus was concluded a journey that will forever remain as one of the most vivid and impressive experiences of my life. It was our privilege to go from one end to the other of the entire front line occupied by the American troops. We beheld these troops and their German enemies in precisely the same positions that they occupied when the great war sounded its last harsh note. The troops were in their bivouacks and trenches, and machine guns and cannon remained where they had fired their final shots. The command posts of company, battery, battalion, regimental and general headquarters remained unmoved. There was, indeed, complete preparation and readiness on all hands to meet any treachery that might manifest itself. Supply and ammunition trains were still functioning. Indeed, it was as if the battle had just ceased for a moment and all were pausing for its renewal.

These conditions existed only for a few hours longer. Even now, after the lapse of two weeks, these front lines have completely disappeared. The Armies of Occupation are marching to their positions along the Rhine, while all of the troops are retiring to permanent quarters in the rear. It will never again be possible to see this scene clothed in the full panoply of war. Countless thousands will visit the scenes of this great struggle, and they will be impressive in their desolation; but the ruins will be moss-grown, and grass will be found in the shell craters. The life of the scene, as we had the privilege of beholding it, will have departed, and only the imagination can call back, and that feebly, the grim and heroic figures that we saw, or animate the scene with the myriad movement and bustle that marks the presence of a great army.